






As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol  **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 102


A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 39

For Safe Driving P. 40	Seat Belts P. 44	Airbags P. 56
Safety Labels P. 102		

Instrument Panel P. 103

Indicators P. 104	Gauges and Displays P. 164
-------------------	----------------------------

Controls P. 181

Clock* P. 182	Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 183
Sunroof* P. 210	
Adjusting the Seats P. 239	

Features P. 273

Audio System* P. 274	Audio System Basic Operation P. 280
Customized Features P. 343	Hands-Free Telephone System P. 372

Driving P. 391

Before Driving P. 392	Towing a Trailer P. 396
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 535	Refueling P. 537

Maintenance P. 545

Before Performing Maintenance P. 546	Oil Monitor System* P. 549
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 579	
Battery P. 603	Remote Transmitter Care P. 606

Handling the Unexpected P. 619

Tools P. 620	If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 621
Overheating P. 653	Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 656
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 679	

Information P. 683

Specifications P. 684	Identification Numbers P. 688
-----------------------	-------------------------------

Contents

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 39

Instrument Panel P. 103

Controls P. 181

Features P. 273

Driving P. 391

Maintenance P. 545

Handling the Unexpected P. 619

Information P. 683

Index P. 692

Pop-up Hood System* P. 70

Child Safety P. 73

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 101

Hatch P. 201

Security System P. 204

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 206

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 212

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 236

Interior Convenience Items P. 247

Climate Control System P. 264

Audio Error Messages P. 335

General Information on the Audio System P. 337

When Driving P. 401

Braking P. 519

Parking Your Vehicle P. 529

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions P. 543

Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 544

Maintenance Schedule* P. 557

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 562

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 592

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 597

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 608

Cleaning P. 611

Accessories and Modifications P. 617

Engine Does Not Start P. 644

If the Battery Is Dead P. 648

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 652

Fuses P. 664

Emergency Towing P. 676

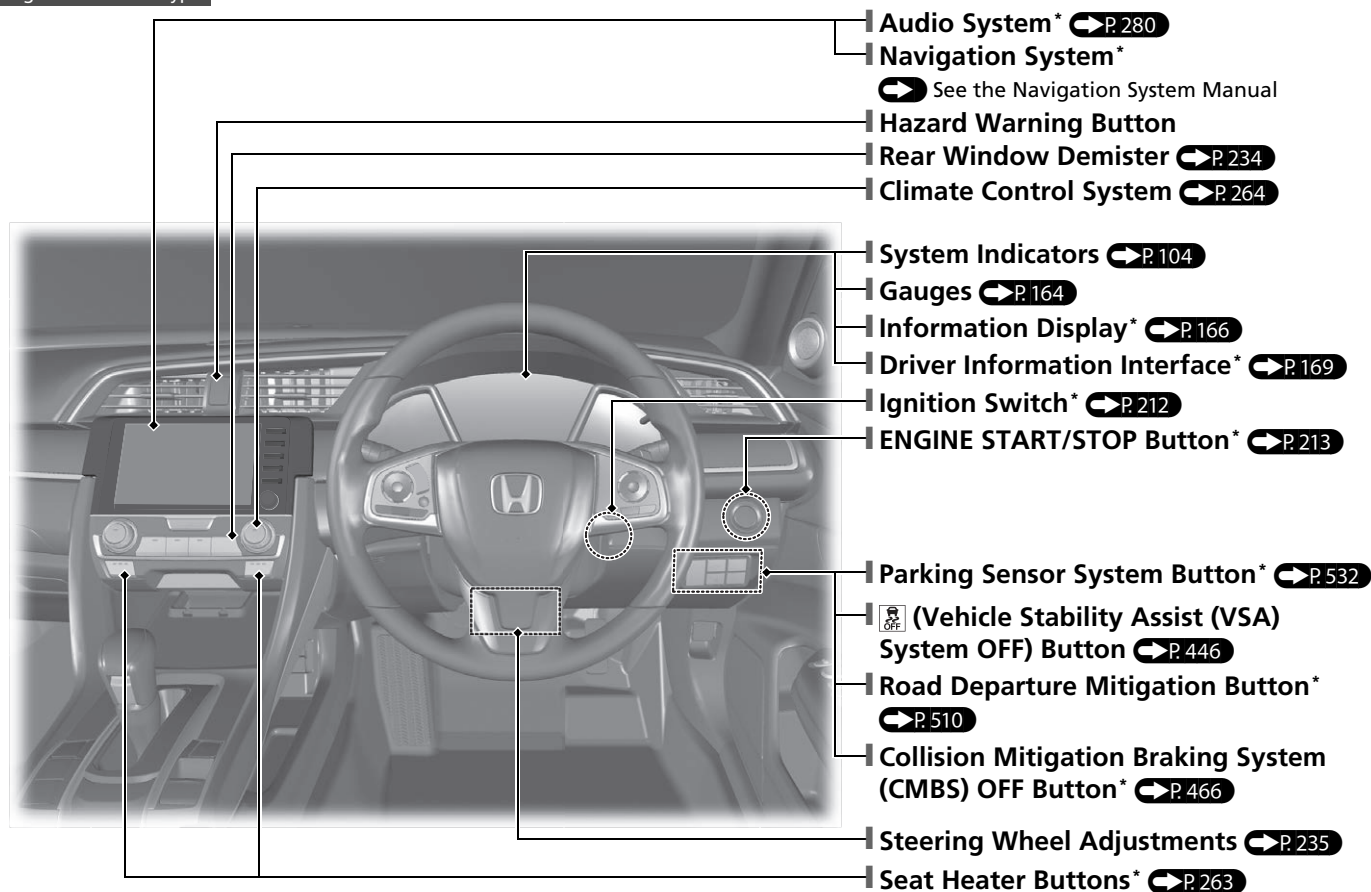
If You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 680

Refueling* P. 681

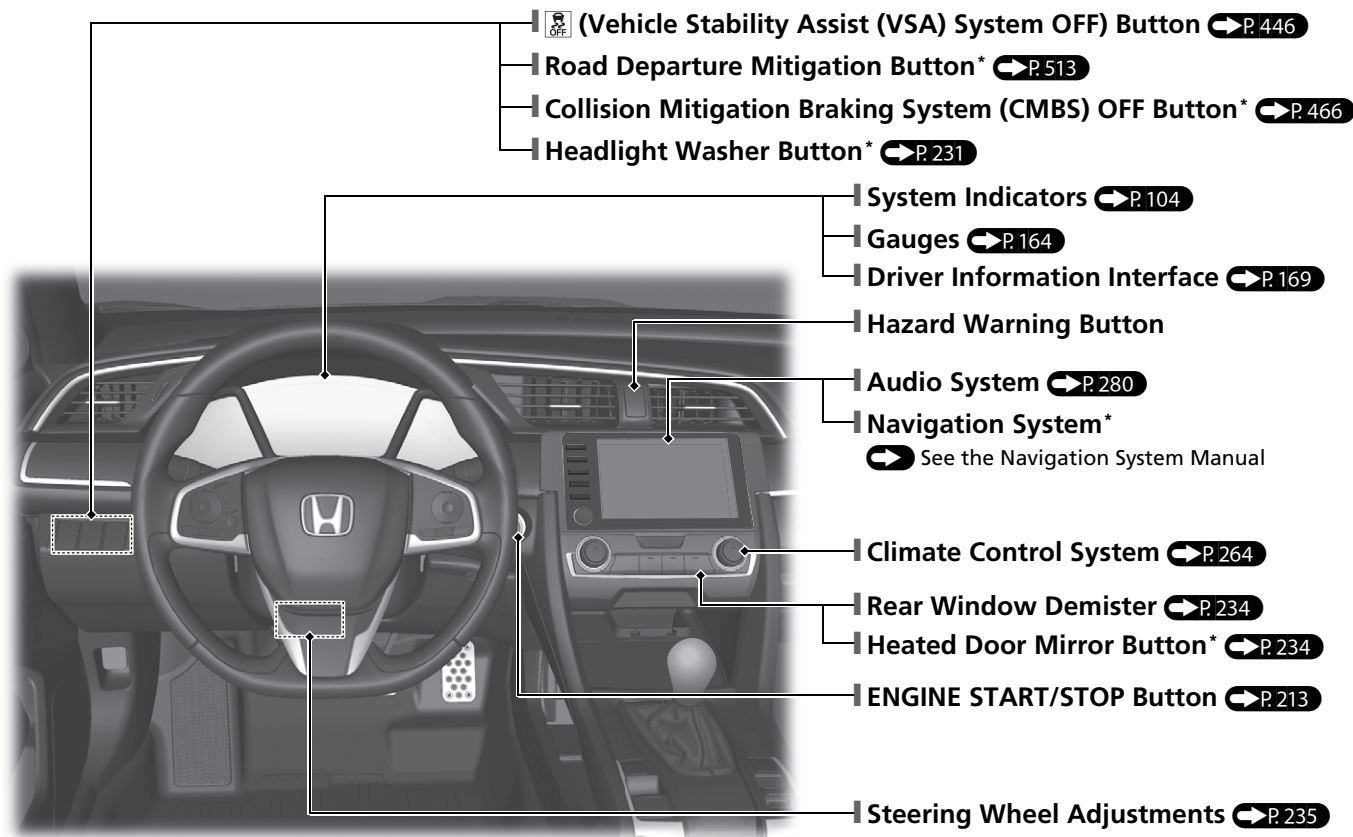
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 690

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type

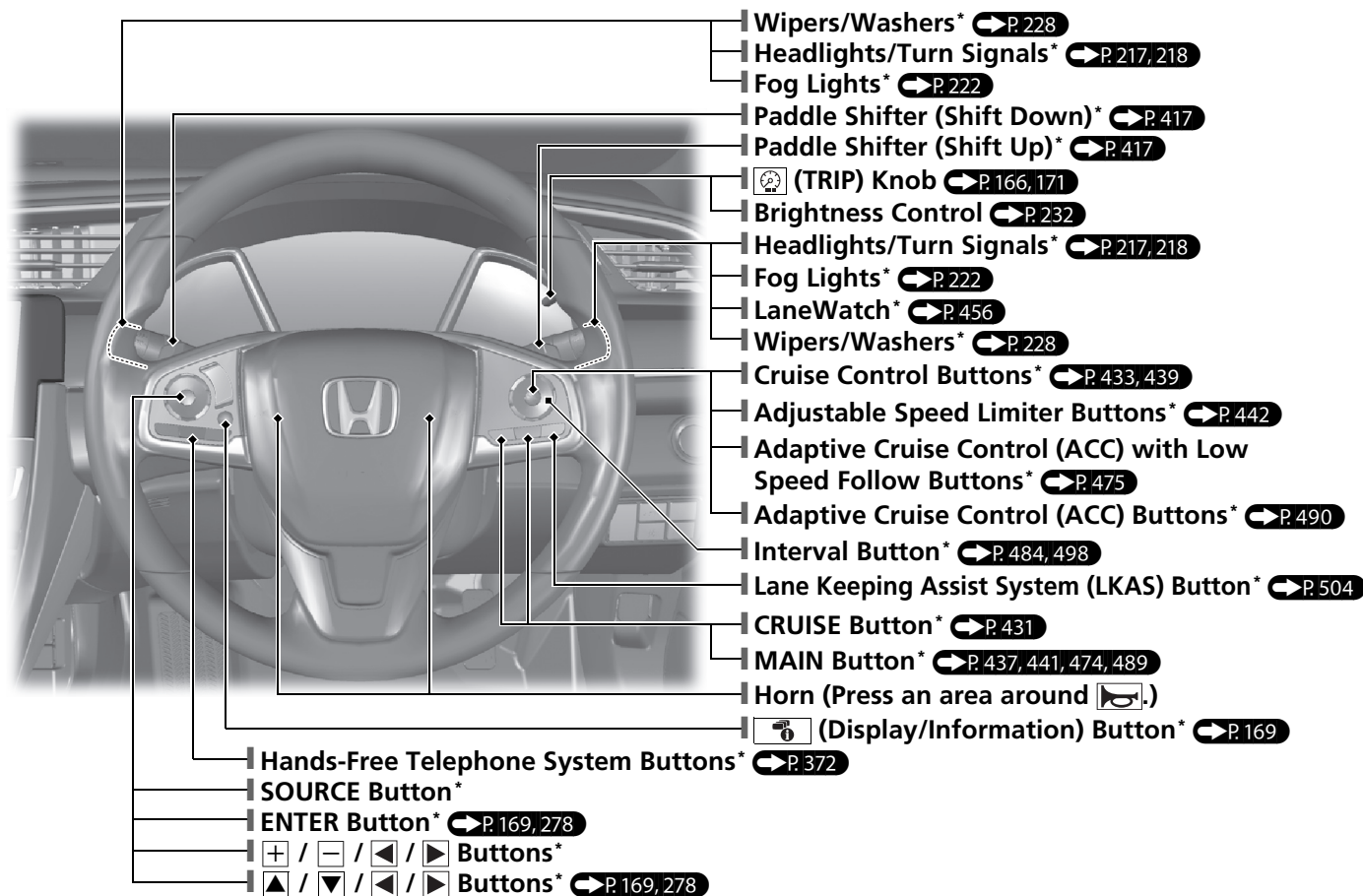


Left-hand Drive Type

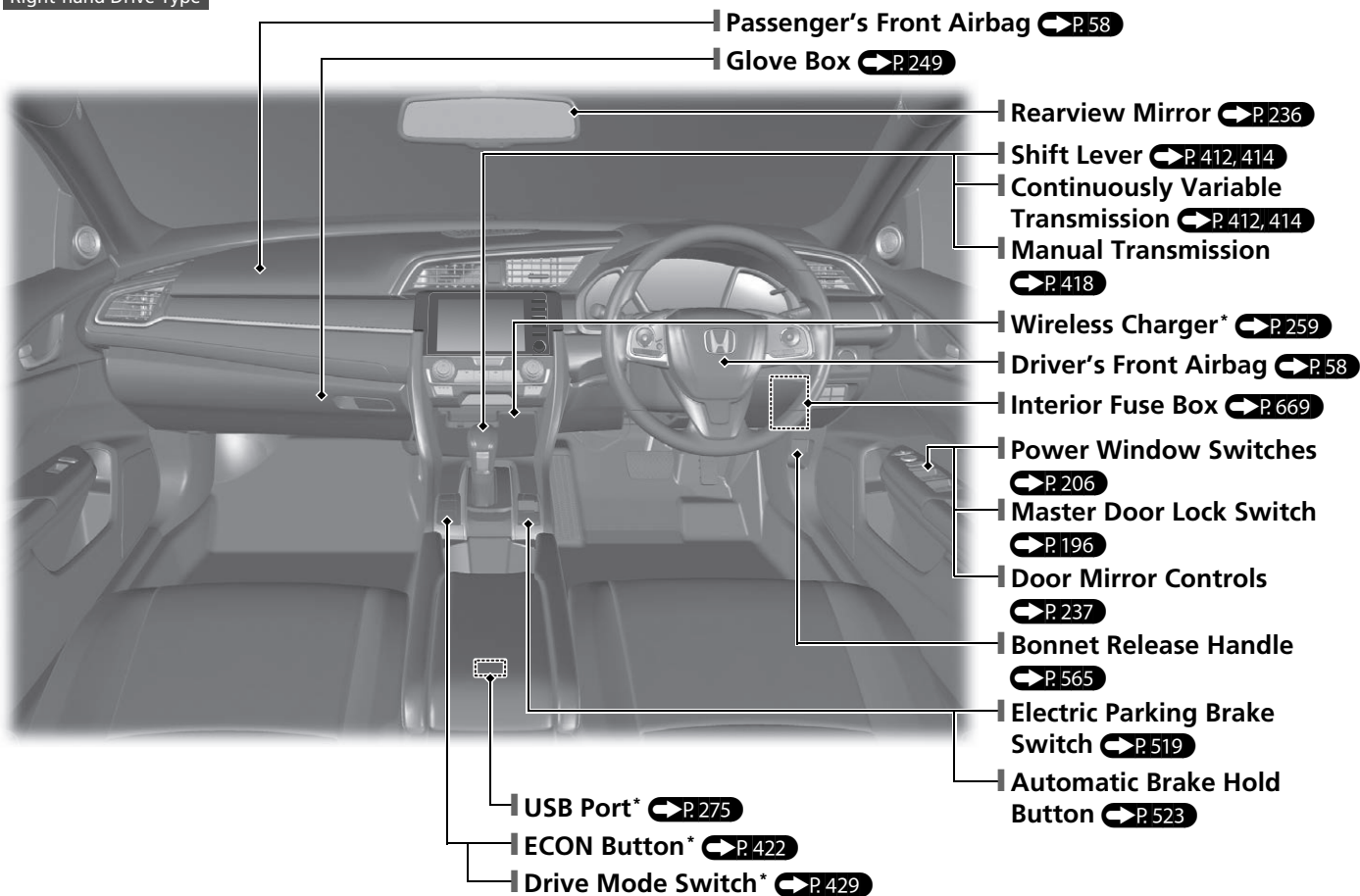


* Not available on all models

Visual Index



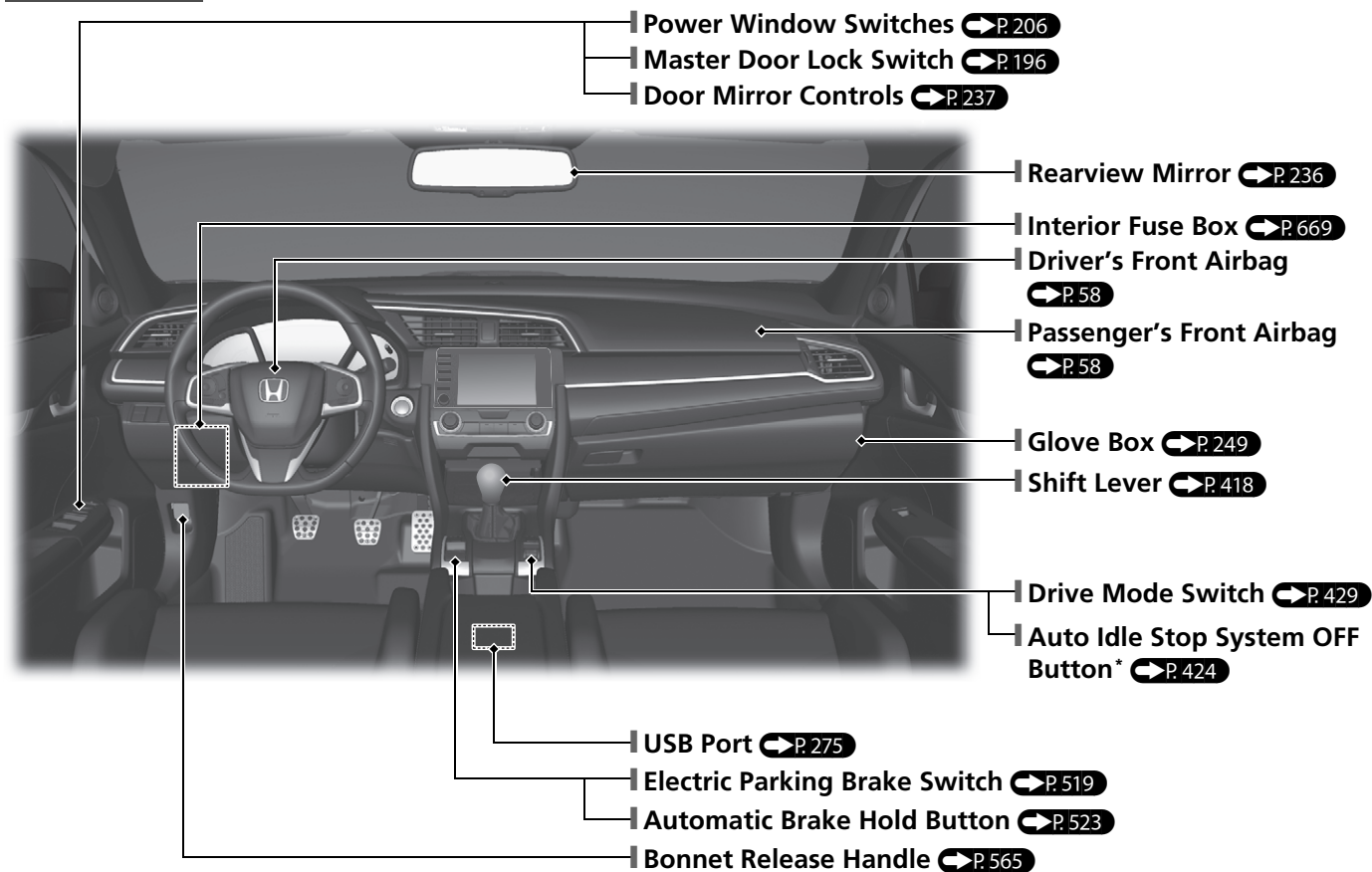
Right-hand Drive Type

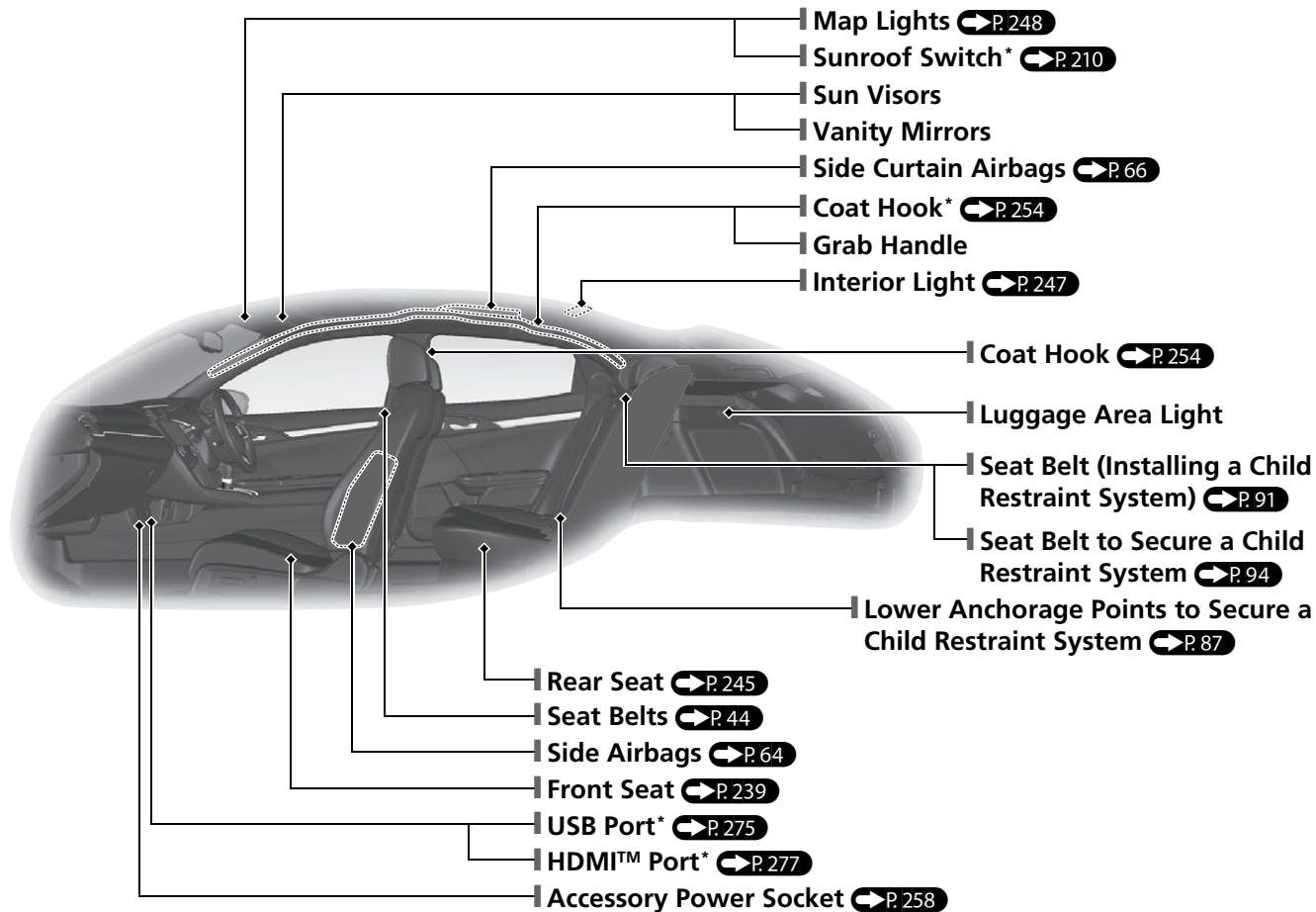


* Not available on all models

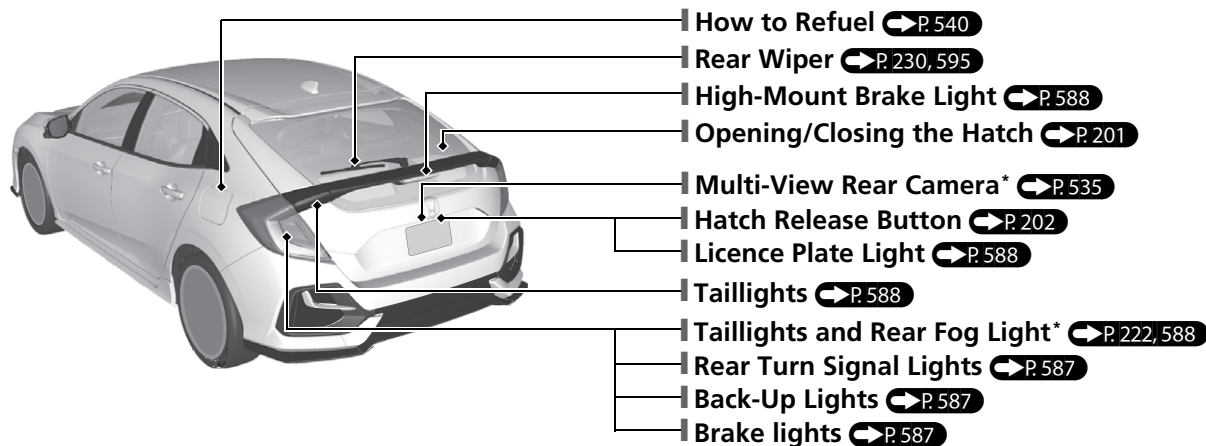
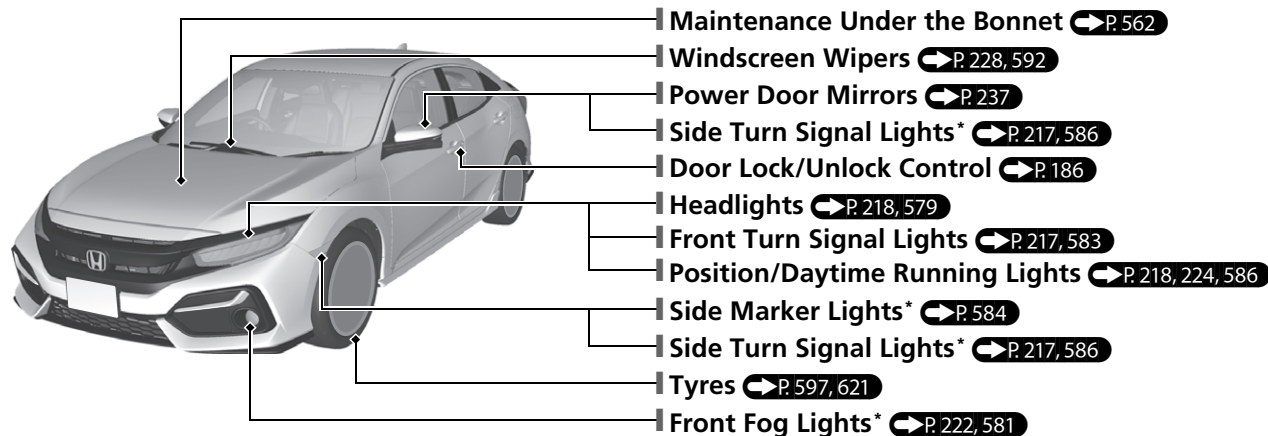
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type





Visual Index

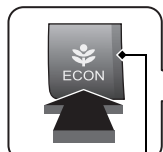


Eco Assist System

Except 2.0 L engine models

Ambient Meter

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.

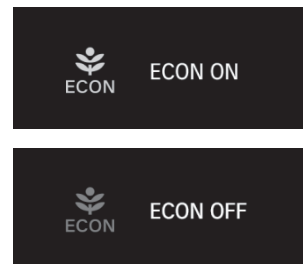


ECON Button ➡ P. 422

Helps to maximise fuel economy.

ECON Mode Indicator ➡ P. 122

Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.


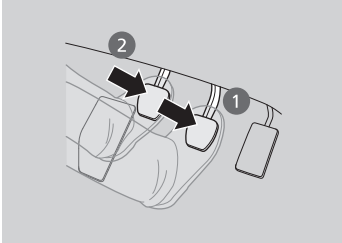
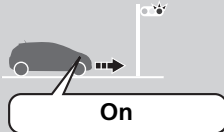

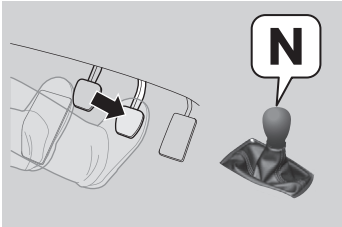
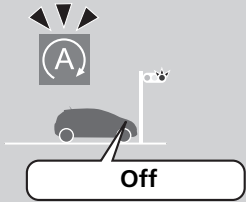
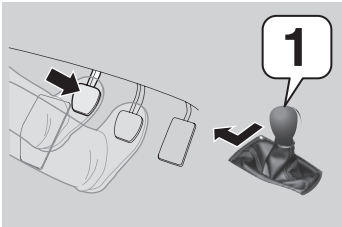
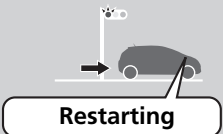


Models with driver information interface

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the ECON button is pressed.

Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. ➡ P. 423

At	Manual transmission	Engine status
Deceleration 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Depress the brake pedal. 2. Fully depress the clutch pedal. 	
Stop 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue to depress the brake pedal. • Move the shift lever to N. • Release the clutch pedal. 	
Start-up	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Depress the clutch pedal again. 2. Move the shift lever to 1. 3. Depress the accelerator pedal to resume driving. 	

Safe Driving ➡ P. 39

Before Driving Checklist ➡ P. 43

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints*, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Child Safety ➡ P. 73

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ➡ P. 101

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts ➡ P. 44

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Airbags ➡ P. 56

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.












Instrument Panel P.103

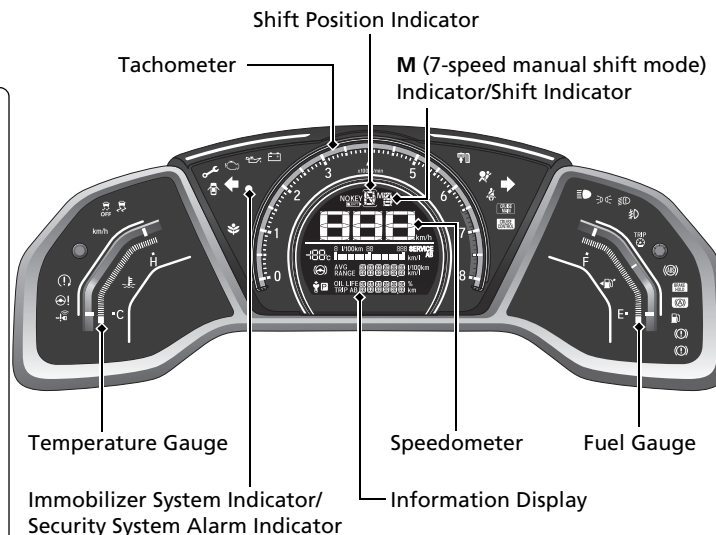
Gauges  P.164 / Information Display*  P.166 /

Driver Information Interface*  P.169 / System Indicators  P.104




Models with information display

System Indicators





-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  Door and Hatch Open Indicator
-  ECON Mode Indicator
-  Starter System Indicator
-  Oil Monitor System Indicator
-  Keyless Access System Indicator
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
















Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator











System Indicators

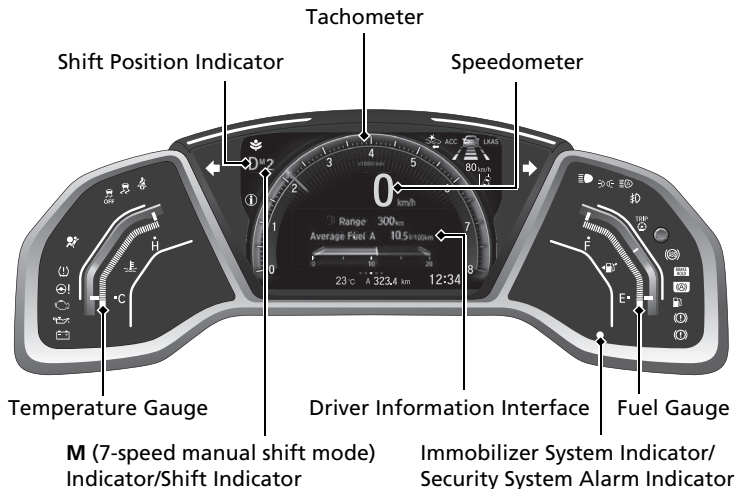
- NO KEY**  **NO KEY** Indicator
-  **KEY BATT** Indicator
-  Shift to Park Indicator
-  Rotate Wheel Indicator

System Indicators


-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Light Control Indicator*
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator
-  **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  Brake Depressing Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

System Indicators





-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  ECON Mode Indicator
-  System Message Indicator
-  Deflation Warning System Indicator*











Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator*
-  Auto High-Beam Indicator*

System Indicators












-  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber/Green)*
-  Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*
-  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)*

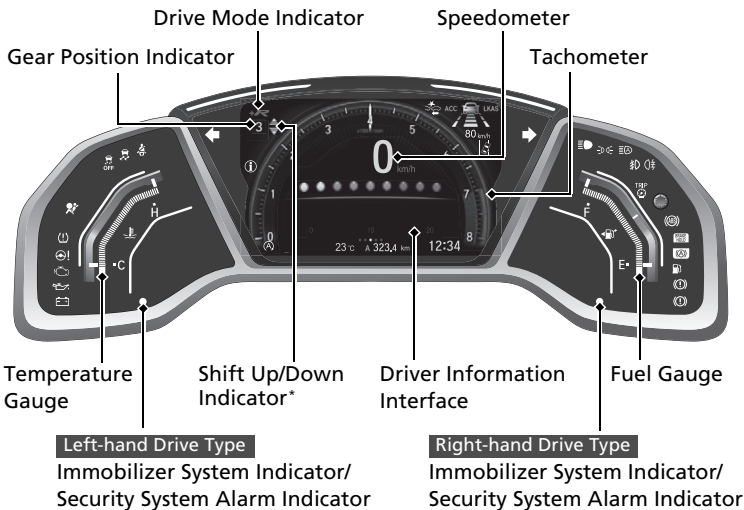
System Indicators

-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)






Models with driver information interface with 2.0 L engine

System Indicators





-  **Seat Belt Reminder Indicator**
-  **Supplemental Restraint System Indicator**
-  **Malfunction Indicator Lamp**
-  **Low Oil Pressure Indicator**
-  **Charging System Indicator**
-  **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator**
-  **VSA OFF Indicator**
-  **Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator**
-  **System Message Indicator**
-  **Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber) / Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)***
-  **Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator***












Lights Indicators

-  **Lights On Indicator**
-  **High Beam Indicator**
-  **Front Fog Light Indicator**
-  **Rear Fog Light Indicator***
-  **Auto High-Beam Indicator***

System Indicators

- ACC**  **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber/Green)***
-  **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator***
-  **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator***
- LKAS**  **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)***




System Indicators

-  **CRUISE MAIN Indicator***
-  **CRUISE CONTROL Indicator***
-  **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator**
-  **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators**
-  **Low Fuel Indicator**
-  **Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator**
-  **Automatic Brake Hold Indicator**
-  **Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)**
-  **Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)**

Controls

Clock *



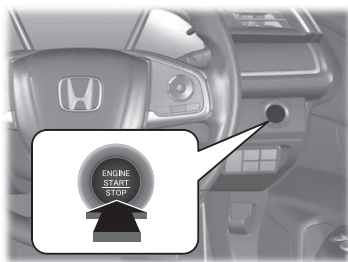
- 1 Press the  (Home) button, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the respective  /  icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

ENGINE START/STOP Button *

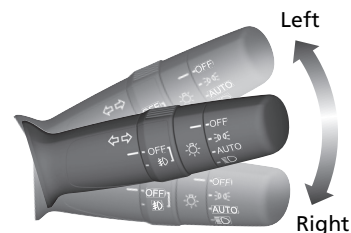
- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



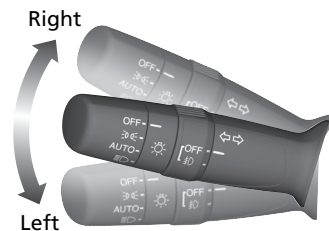
Turn Signals

Turn Signal Control Lever

Right-hand drive type



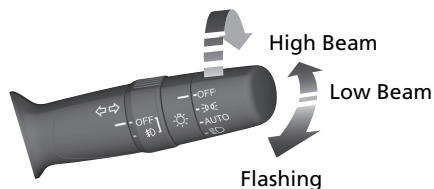
Left-hand drive type



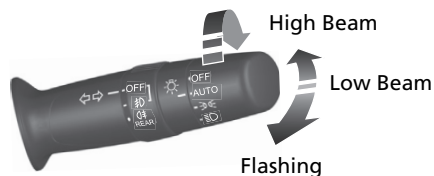
Lights P.218

Light Control Switches

Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models



Malaysian and Vietnamese models



Wipers and Washers

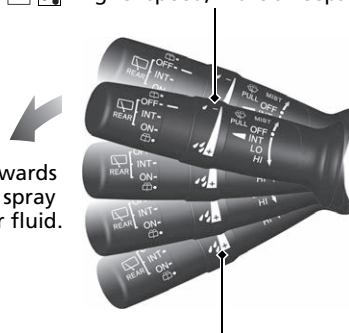
 P.228

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring*

- : Low sensitivity*¹
- ☀: Lower speed, fewer sweeps*²
- +: High sensitivity*¹
- +☀: Higher speed, more sweeps*²

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



MIST
OFF

AUTO*¹: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT*²: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

*¹: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

*²: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

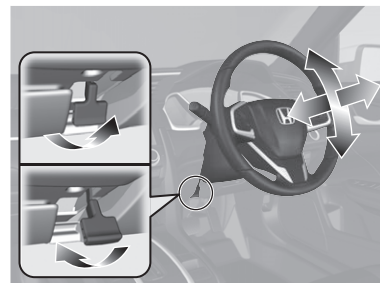
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P.235

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

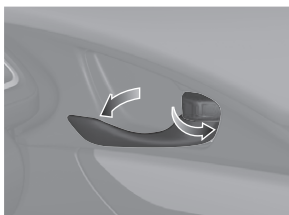
➡ P.195

Except Vietnamese models

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

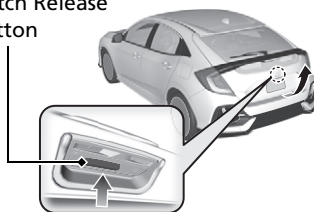
Vietnamese models

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Hatch ➡ P.201

Hatch Release Button



Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

Models with keyless access system

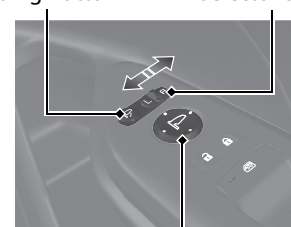
- Press the hatch release button to unlock and open the hatch when you carry the keyless remote.

Power Door Mirrors

➡ P.237

- With the ignition switch in ON (II)*1, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Folding Button* Selector Switch




Adjustment Switch

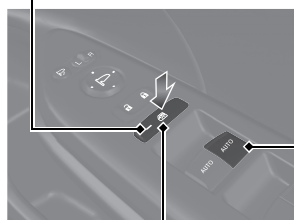
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Power Windows

- With the ignition switch in ON ^{*}1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Indicator





Window Switch

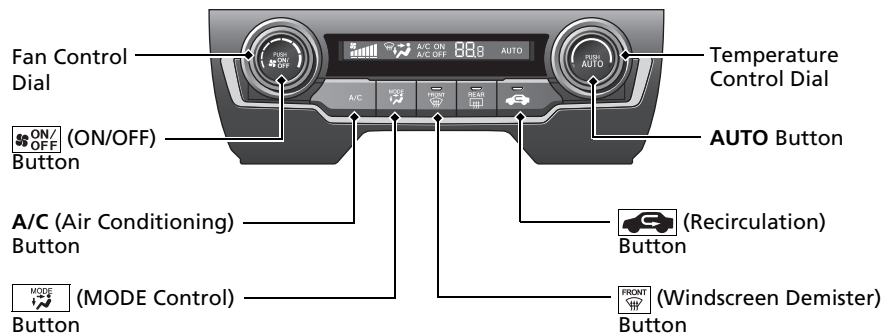
Power Window Lock Button





^{*}1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Climate Control System

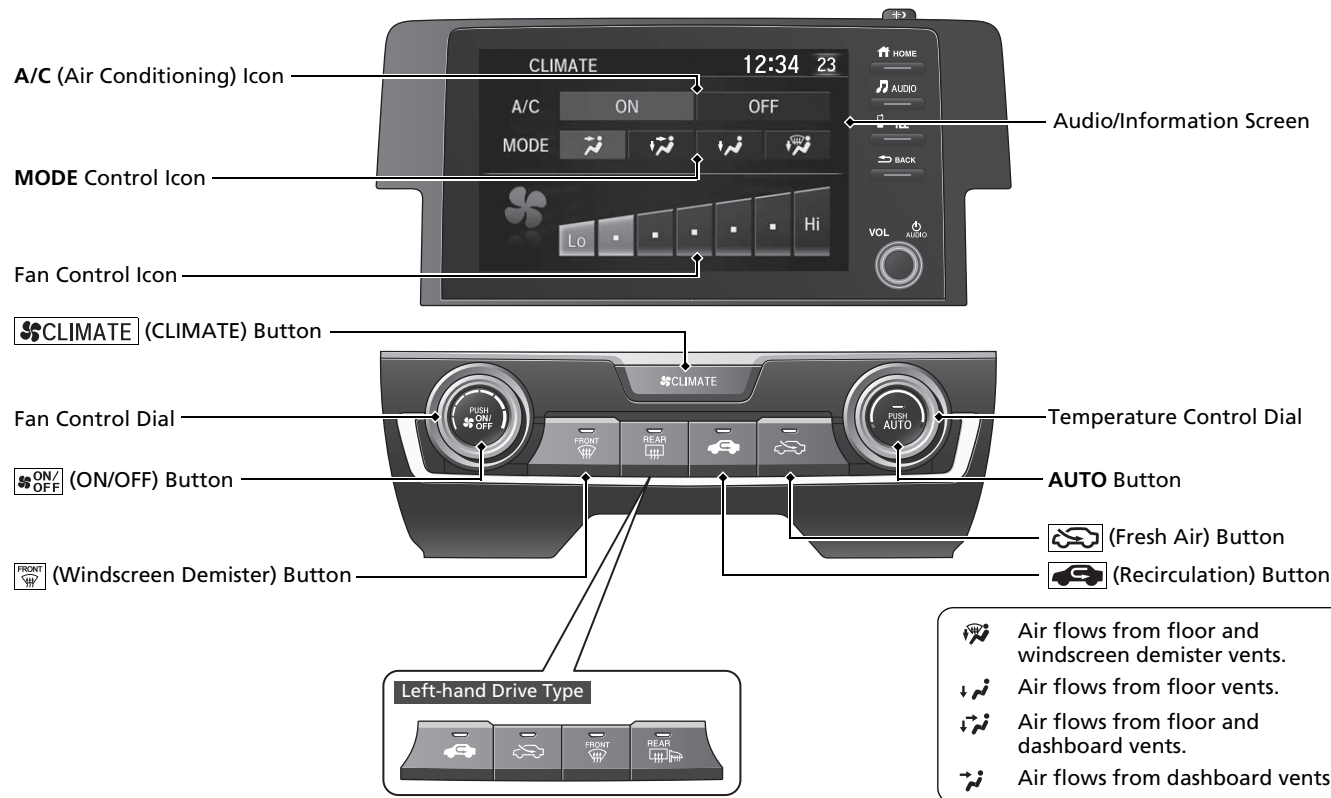
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

Models without Display Audio



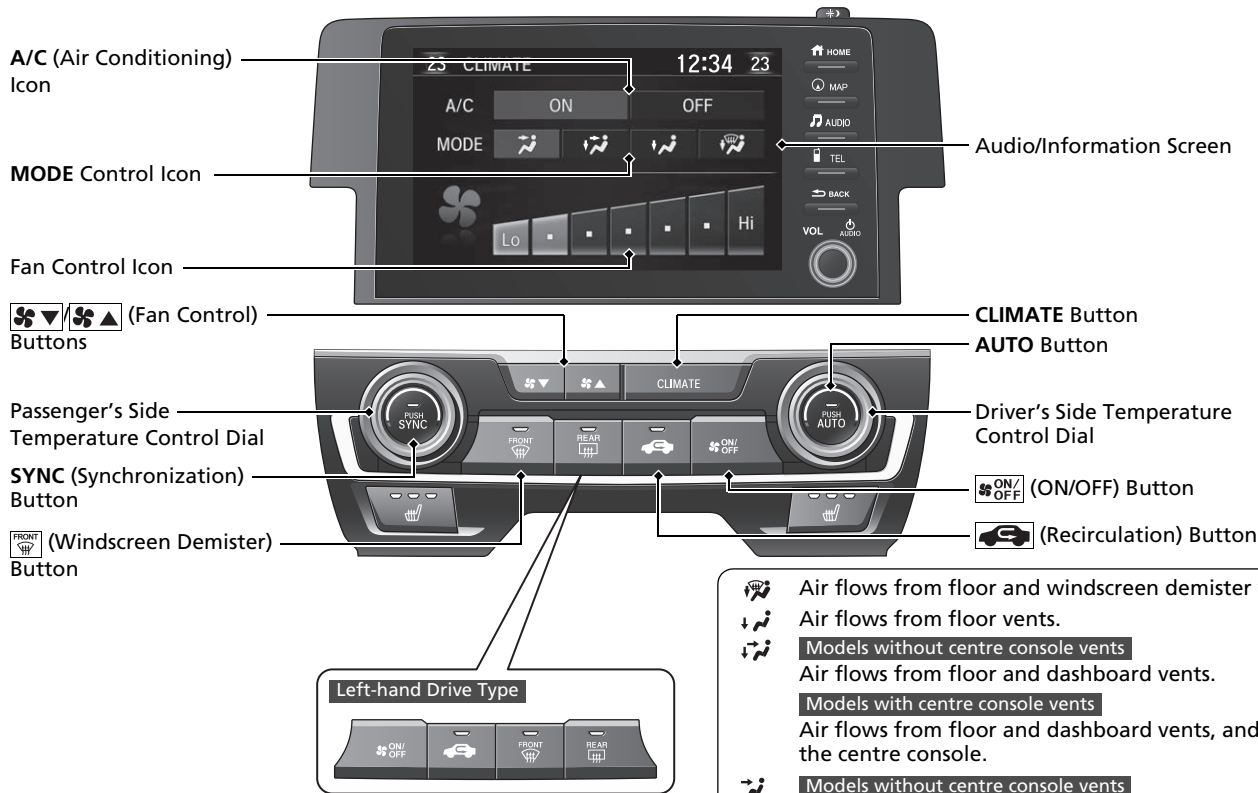
-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.
-  Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the centre console.

Models with Display Audio
Models without SYNC button



Models with Display Audio

Models with SYNC button

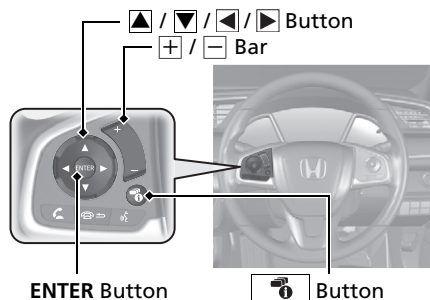


- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Models without centre console vents**
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Models with centre console vents**
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the centre console.
- Models without centre console vents**
Air flows from dashboard vents.
- Models with centre console vents**
Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the centre console.

Features ➡ P.273

Audio Remote Controls *

➡ P.278



- **+** / **-** Bar
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **▲** / **▼** Button
Press **▲** or **▼** to cycle through the audio mode as follows:
FM→DAB*→AM→USB→iPod→
Bluetooth® Audio→Apps→
Audio Apps→AUX-HDMI™*

- When listening to the radio

- 1** Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- 2** Press **▲** or **▼** to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

- 1** Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
- 2** Press **▲** or **▼** to select a folder.
- 3** Press **ENTER** to display a list of files in that folder.
- 4** Press **▲** or **▼** to select a file, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod

- 1** Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
- 2** Press **▲** or **▼** to select a category.
- 3** Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
- 4** Press **▲** or **▼** to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
▶ Press **ENTER** and press **▲** or **▼** repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

- When listening to *Bluetooth®* Audio

- 1** Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
- 2** Press **▲** or **▼** to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- **◀** / **▶** Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous ensemble (DAB*).

USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

- **i** Button

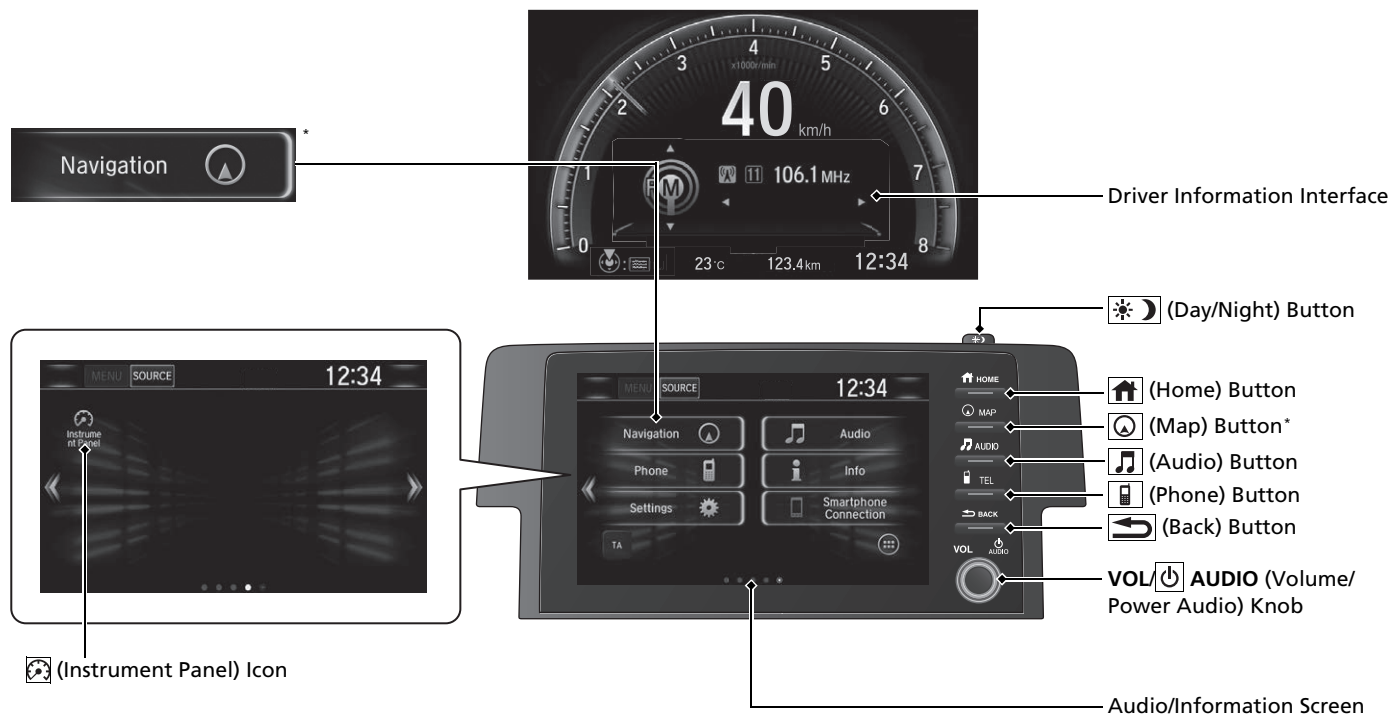
Press to change contents:

▶ **Driver Information Interface***

➡ P.169

Audio System *

For navigation system operation  See the Navigation System Manual



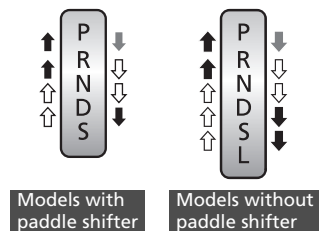
Driving P. 391




Manual Transmission* P. 418

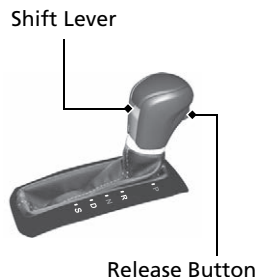
Continuously Variable Transmission* P. 412, 414

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting



-  Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.
-  Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.
-  Press the release button to move the shift lever.



- P Park**
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.
- R Reverse**
Used when reversing.
- N Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.
- D Drive**
 - Normal driving.
 - On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.

- S Models with paddle shifters**
Drive (S)
7-speed manual shift mode can be used.
- S Models without paddle shifters**
Drive (S)
 - Better acceleration.
 - Increased engine braking.
 - Going up or down hills.
- L Low***
 - Further increased engine braking.
 - Going up or down hills.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* ➔ P.416

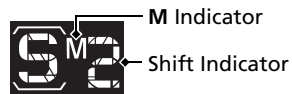
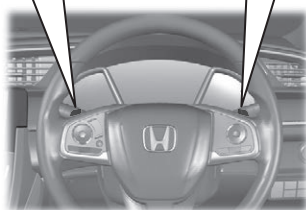
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without releasing your hands from the steering wheel.

When the shift lever is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the shift lever is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.

Models with information display**Models with driver information interface****Paddle Shifter (-)****Paddle Shifter (+)**

CMBS* On and Off ➔ P. 466

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

VSA On and Off ➔ P. 446

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Cruise Control* ➔ P. 431, 437

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
Models without Adjustable Speed Limiter
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **-/SET** button when the vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.
Models with Adjustable Speed Limiter
- To use cruise control, press the **MAIN** button. Select cruise control by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 30 km/h).

Deflation Warning System* ➔ P. 450, 453

Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine
The deflation warning system detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

Oceanian, Indonesian, and Vietnamese models with 2.0 L engine

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- Deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Adjustable Speed Limiter* ➔ P. 441

- This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** button when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h to 250 km/h.

2.0 L engine models

- The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to 320 km/h.

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

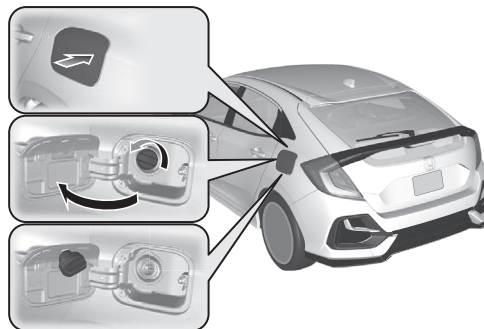
Refueling ➡ P.537

Fuel **Thai models**
recommendation: Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Other models
Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 47 L

- 1** Unlock the driver's door.
➡ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ➡ P.195
- 2** Press the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
- 3** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 4** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 5** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Refueling ➡ P.538

Fuel recommendation:

Except Vietnamese and Thai models

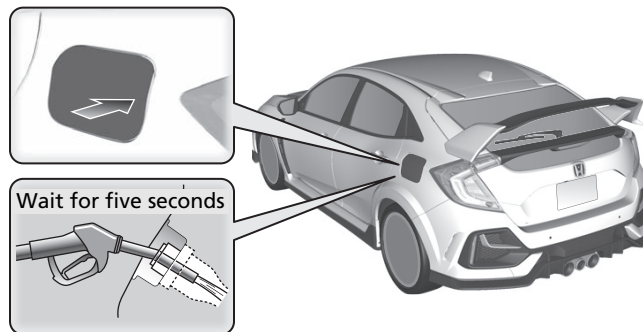
Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Vietnamese and Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 46.9 L

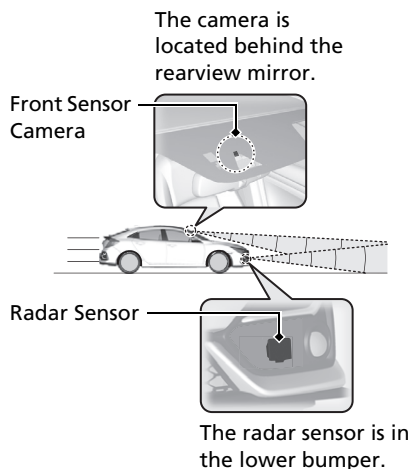
- 1 Unlock the driver's door.
➡ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ➡ P.195
- 2 Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
- 3 After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.



Honda Sensing*

➡ P.459

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the lower bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➡ P.462

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

➡ P.473

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

➡ P.488

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➡ P.502

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System

➡ P.510

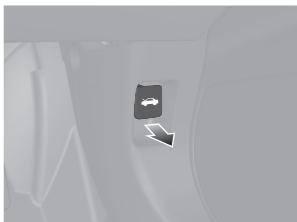
Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Maintenance ➔ P.545

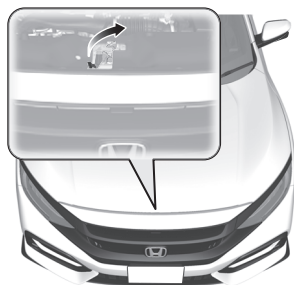
Under the Bonnet ➔ P.562

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades ➔ P.592

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres ➔ P.597

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights ➔ P.579

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected ➡ P.619

Flat Tyre ➡ P.621

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

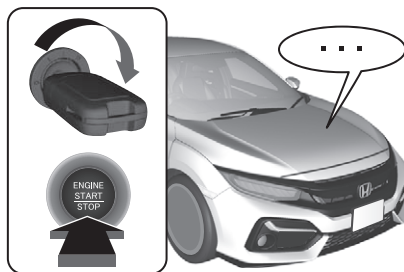
Models with a compact spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre in the luggage area.



Engine Won't Start ➡ P.644

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



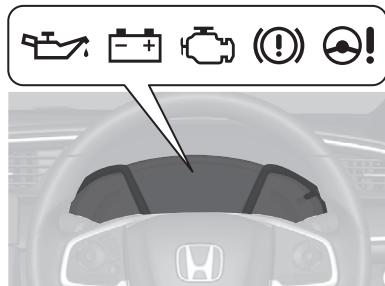
Overheating ➡ P.653

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



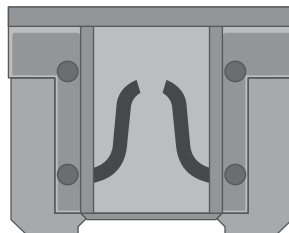
Indicators Come On ➡ P.656

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse ➡ P.664

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing ➡ P.676

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q Models without keyless access system
The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**. Why?

Models with keyless access system
The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?

A The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q Models without keyless access system
The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with keyless access system
The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



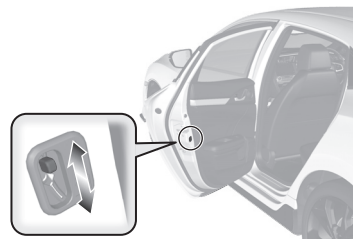
Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➡ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➡ P.526

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.



To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

Models without keyless access system

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Models with keyless access system*¹

Q Why does a buzzer sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
 ➤ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock*)
 ➡ P.189

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger* are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?

A The Deflation Warning System* needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.
 ➤ Deflation Warning System ➡ P.450, 453

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P*** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

*1:Except Vietnamese and Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine models

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine**
Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher is recommended.
Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 88 or lower on this vehicle?

A Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. Use of petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.



2.0 L engine models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher is recommended.

Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or lower on this vehicle?



Vietnamese, Hongkong and Macau models

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

We recommend that you use a research octane of 98 or higher to maximize the performance of the engine.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Except Vietnamese, Hongkong and Macau models

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	40
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	42
Safety Checklist	43

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	44
Fastening a Seat Belt	50
Seat Belt Inspection.....	54
Anchorage Points.....	55

Airbags

Airbag System Components	56
Types of Airbags	58

Front Airbags (SRS)	58
Side Airbags.....	64
Side Curtain Airbags	66
Airbag System Indicators.....	68
Airbag Care	69

Pop-up Hood System*

About the Pop-up Hood System.....	70
Pop-up Hood System Care	72

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	73
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	77
Safety of Larger Children	98

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	101
--------------------------	-----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	102
-----------------------	-----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

⌘ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

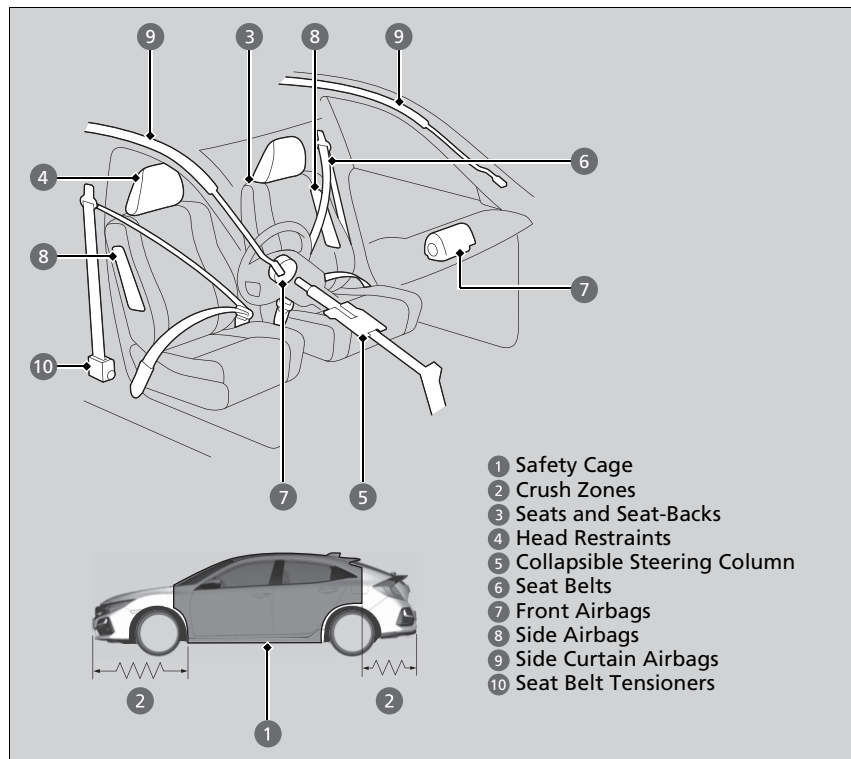
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

►► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

► **Adjusting the Seats** P. 239

Except 2.0 L engine models

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

► **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 239

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

► **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 50

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

► **Child Safety** P. 73

* Not available on all models

►► Safety Checklist

Models with information display

If the door/hatch open indicator is on, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the indicator goes off.

► **Door and Hatch Open Indicator*** P. 115



Models with driver information interface

If the door and/or hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the message disappears.

► **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*** P. 138



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

» About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four or five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

Models without lockable retractor seat belts

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 91

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 91

►► About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

►► About Your Seat Belts

Models with lockable retractor seat belts

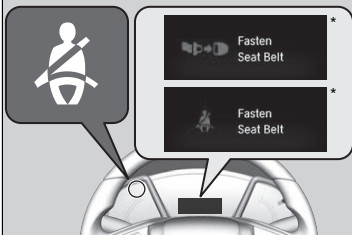
If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

Seat Belt Reminder

Models with information display



Models with driver information interface



Front seats

Except Singaporean models

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts. If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II***¹ and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

Singaporean models

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver to fasten a seat belt. If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until a seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Seat Belt Reminder

Except Singaporean models

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II***¹.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat.

Check if:

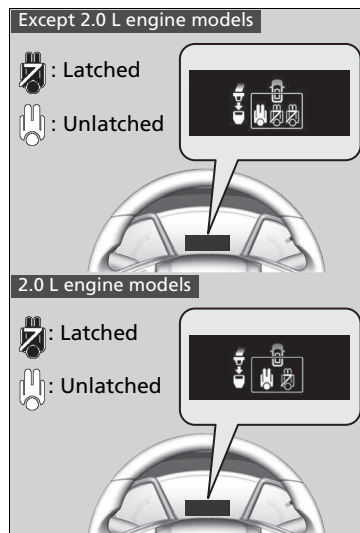
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



Australian, New Zealand and Vietnamese models

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

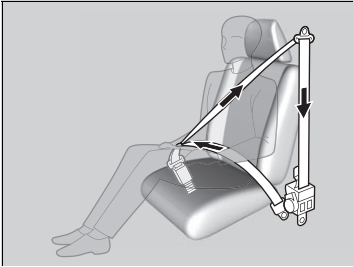
- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastened or unfastened their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

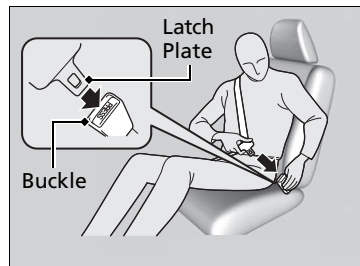
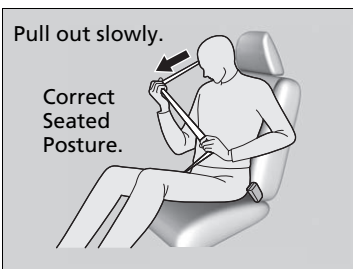
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

► Adjusting the Seats P. 239



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

► Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

► **About Your Seat Belts** P. 44

► **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 54



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

► Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

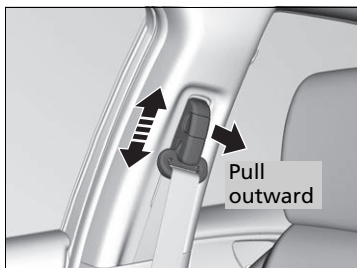
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

► Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

▣ Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

►► Seat Belt Inspection

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points

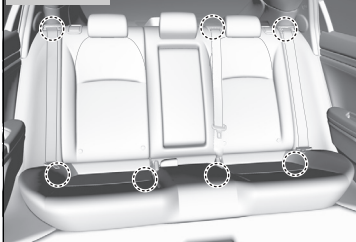
Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

Except 2.0 L engine models

Rear Seat

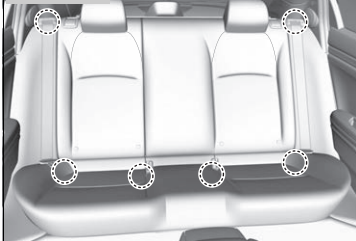


Except 2.0 L engine models

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

2.0 L engine models

Rear Seat



2.0 L engine models

The rear seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS**

AIRBAG.

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG.**
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG.**

- An electronic control unit that, when the ignition switch is in ON **II***¹, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

Vietnamese model

- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.


SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON *1.

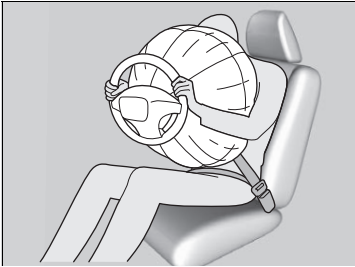
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts, side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

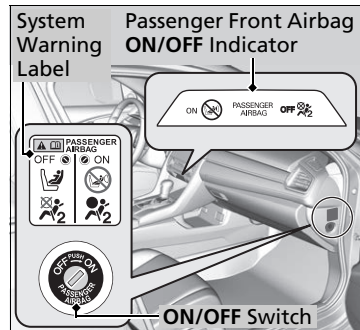
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Vietnamese model

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built in key.

■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

OFF: The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

ON: The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

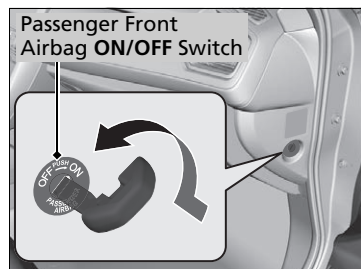
If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Remove the built-in key from the transmitter.

■ **Built-in Key*** P. 184

2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
 - The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

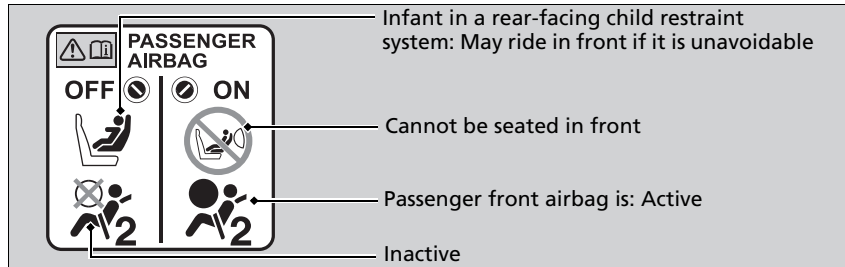
■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

🔑 Protecting Infants P. 77

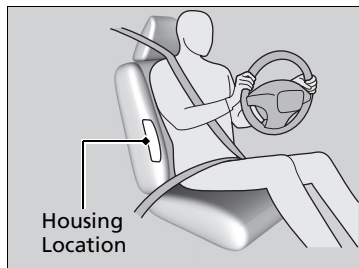
It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

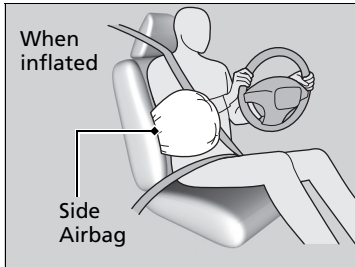
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

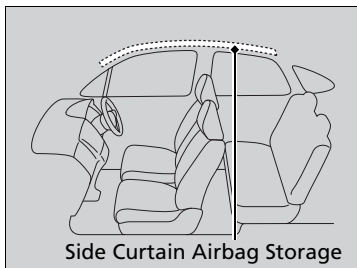
▣ Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

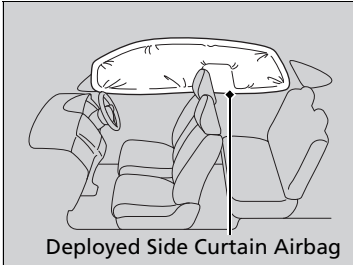
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

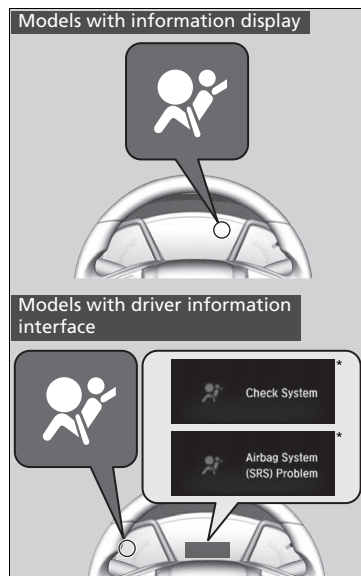
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface*.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON *1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

► Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Vietnamese model

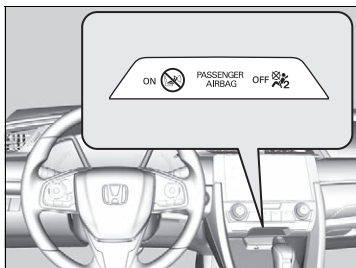
WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

Vietnamese model

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

▣ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Pop-up Hood System*

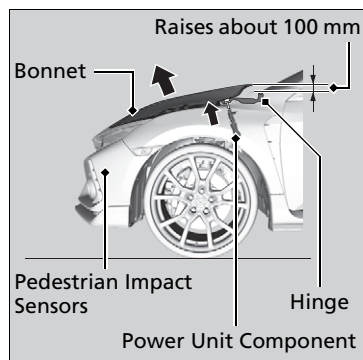
About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

The System Activates When

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

How the System Works



When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

About the Pop-up Hood System

⚠ WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

The following conditions may also activate the system.

- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

The system may not activate if your vehicle is:

- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

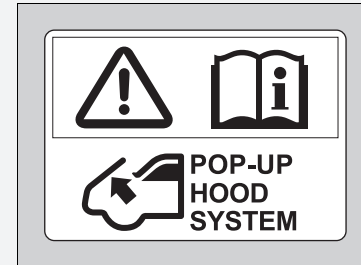
⌘ About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:

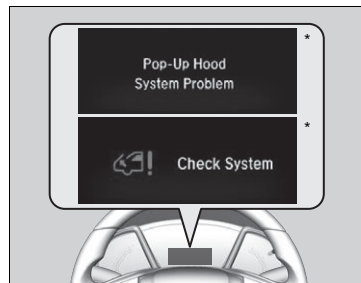
- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

Pop-up Hood System label is found under the bonnet:

📌 **Label Locations** P. 102



■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood



■ When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself.

However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

⌘ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

⌘ Pop-up Hood System Care

If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

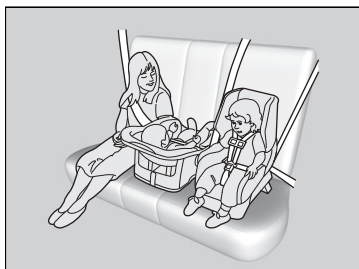
In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 80

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.

► Protecting Child Passengers

Hongkong, Macau and Malaysian Models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠ WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 206

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

►► Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➤ **Safety Labels** P. 102

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.

Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

- Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

►► Protecting Infants

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

► Protecting Infants

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

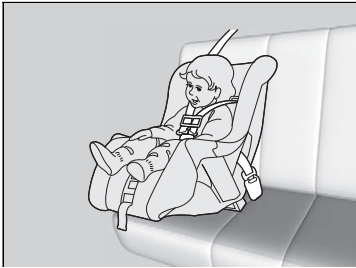
Vietnamese model

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

► **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 61

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

►► Protecting Smaller Children

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend the child restraint system with UN Regulation No. 44 or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

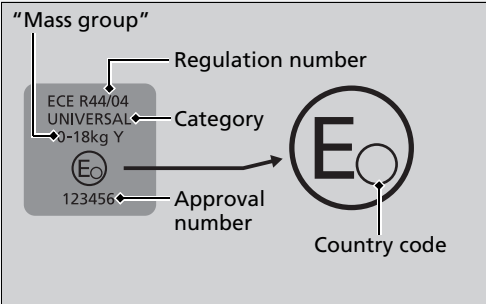
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

■ **Child Restraint Systems Standards**

If a child restraint system (whether an ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

►► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



■ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages. However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (ISOFIX) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

▣ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Malaysian models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions			Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
			Front passenger	Rear seat		
				L-Side	R-Side	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	
group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	Honda ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	Honda ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	Honda ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group II 15 to 25 kg			X	X	X	
group III 22 to 36 kg			X	X	X	

► Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

*1:	The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.
IUF:	Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
IL:	Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.
X:	Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

■ **Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt**

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child’s weight (mass group) and size.

☒ **Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt**

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer’s instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Malaysian models

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

MASS Group	Seating position			Recommended Child Restraint Systems* ¹
	Front passenger seat	Rear seat		
		L-Side	R-Side	
group 0 up to 10 kg	X	U	U	Honda Baby Safe
group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	U	U	Honda Baby Safe
group I 9 to 18 kg	UF* ²	U	U	Honda ISOFIX (Belted)
group II 15 to 25 kg	UF* ²	U	U	
group III 22 to 36 kg	UF* ²	U	U	

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

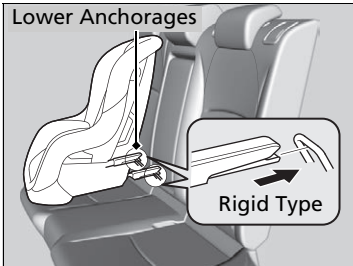
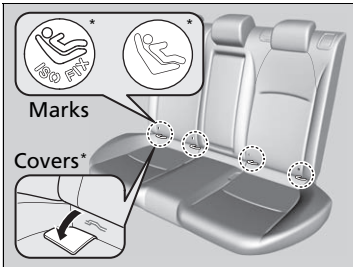
X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda’s recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer’s list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost and adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position.

■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the anchor marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.

Models with anchorage covers

Pull out the anchor covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

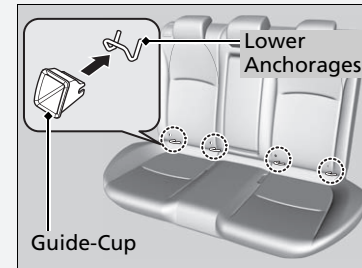
► When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

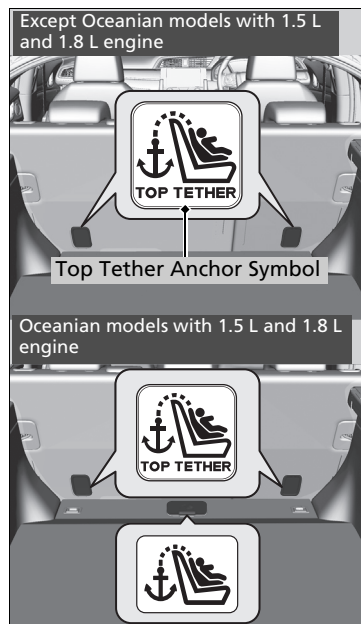
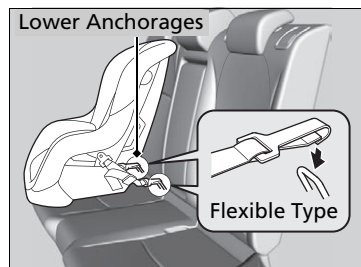
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



* Not available on all models



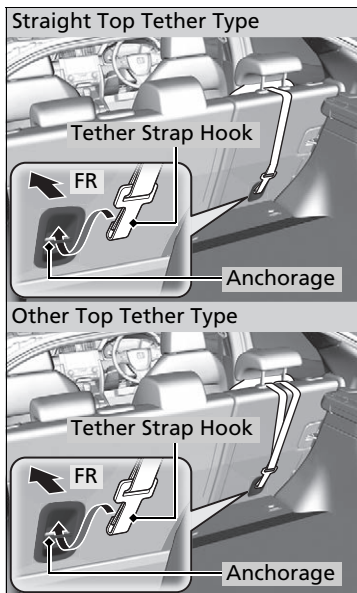
►► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



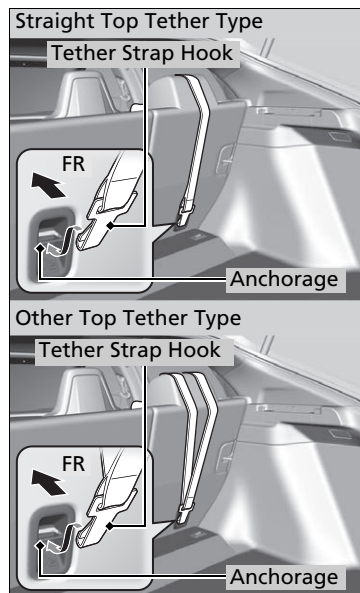
Except 2.0 L engine models

3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
► Retract the luggage area cover.
 ❏ Luggage Area Cover* P. 256
4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
 ► Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Models with lockable retractor

The lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

* Not available on all models



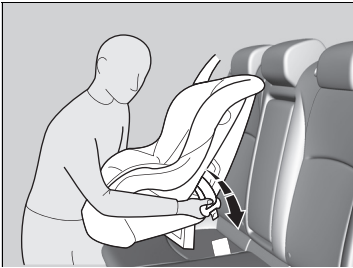
2.0 L engine models

3. Retract the luggage area cover*.
- Luggage Area Cover*** P. 256
4. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
 - Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

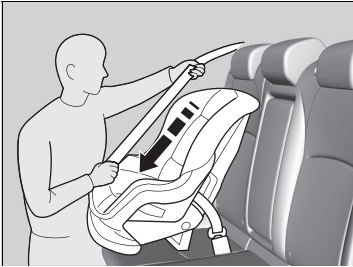
Models with lockable retractor

The lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



Models with lockable retractor

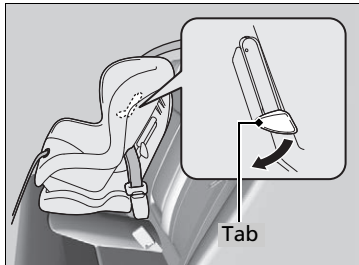
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract several centimetres and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
► If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

▣ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

Models without lockable retractor

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

► When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

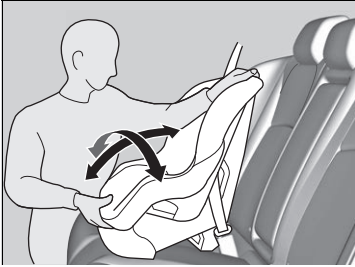
► When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Models with lockable retractor

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



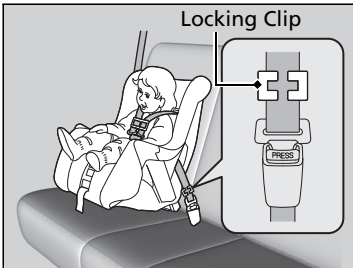
All models

- 6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- 7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Models without lockable retractor

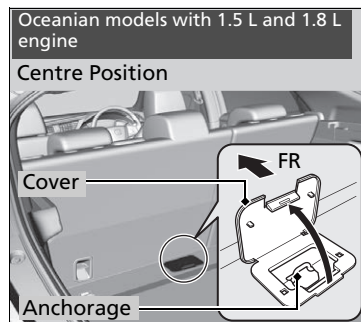
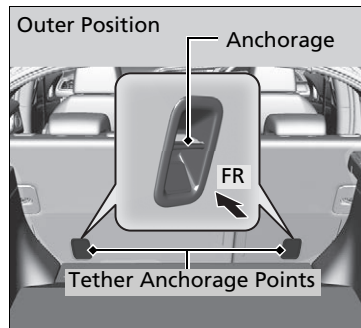
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.



- 3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- 4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- 5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

■ Adding Security with a Tether



Except Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each outer rear seating position.

Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine

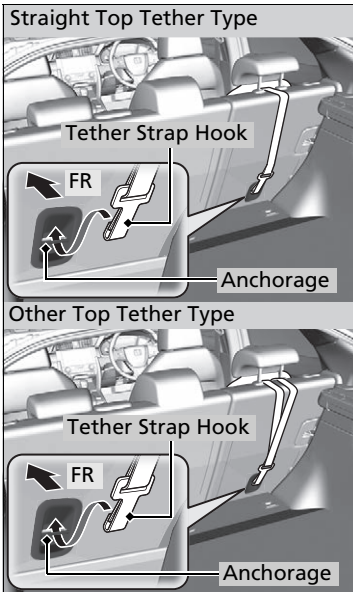
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position.

If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

►► Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

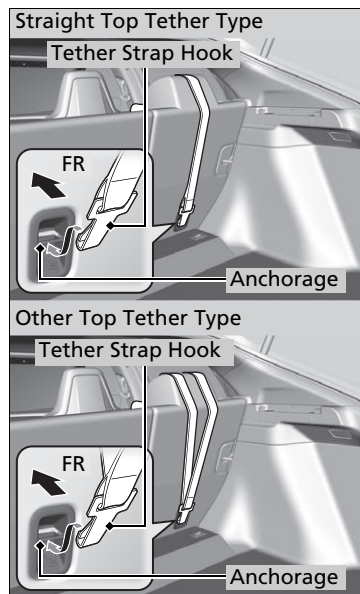


Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Using an outer anchor

1. Retract the luggage area cover.
 ► **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 256
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
 ► Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

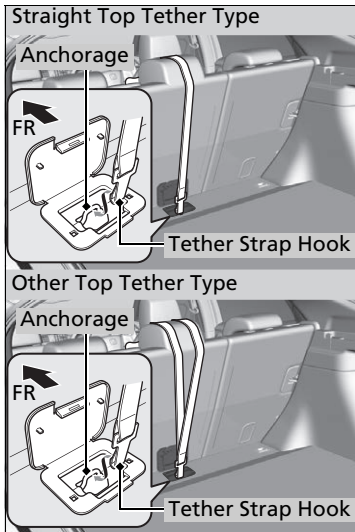
* Not available on all models



2.0 L engine models

■ Using an outer anchor

1. Retract the luggage area cover*.
 ❑ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 256
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
 ► Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.



Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine

■ Using the centre anchor

1. Retract the luggage area cover.
 ► **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 256
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
 ► Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

* Not available on all models

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

► Safety of Larger Children

⚠ WARNING

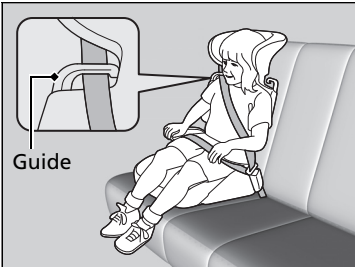
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

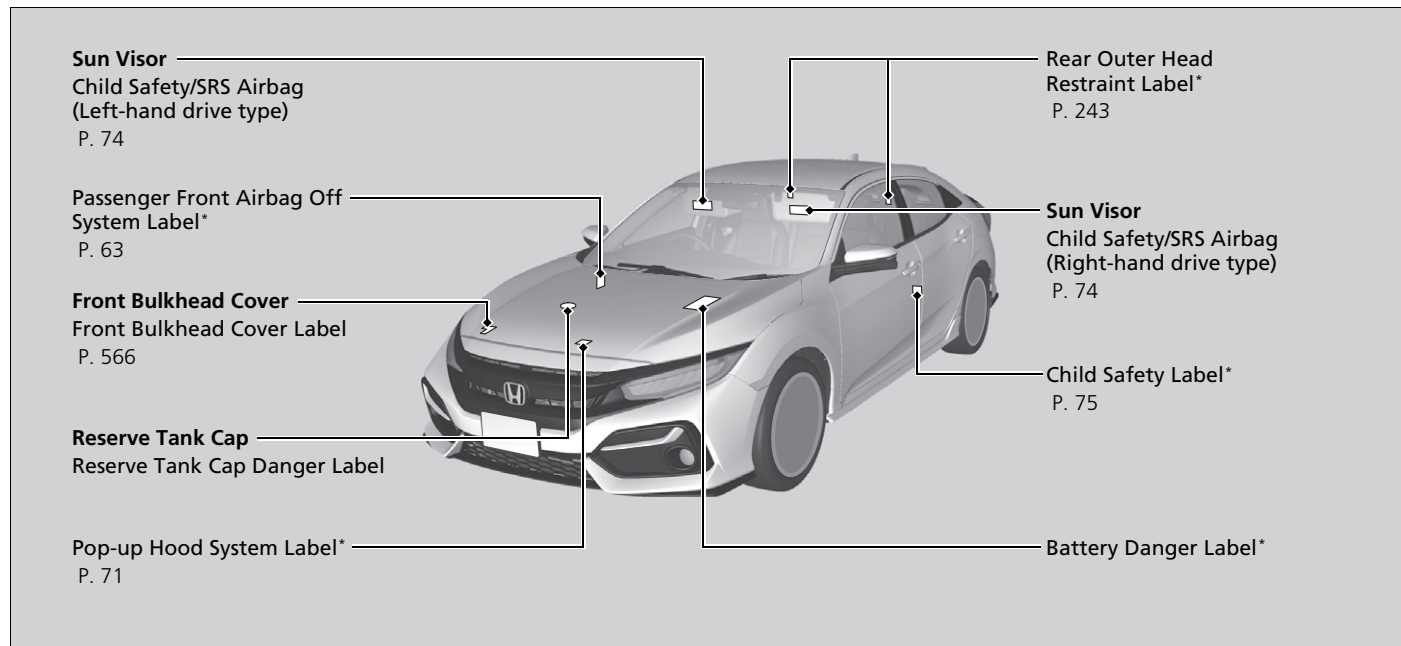
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.











Indicators

Information Display Warning and Information Messages*	137
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*	138

Gauges and Displays





Gauges	164
Information Display*	166
Driver Information Interface*	169

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➔ What to do it comes on while driving P. 658 Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➔ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 658 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div> Release Parking Brake</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div> Release Parking Brake</div> </div> <div> <div> Brake Fluid Low</div> <div> WARNING: Brake Fluid Low</div> </div> <div> <div> Check System</div> <div> Brake System Problem</div> </div>












*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type

*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. Comes on for several seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the ignition switch is in LOCK ^{*1}, then goes off. Stays on for several seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK ^{*1} while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. <ul style="list-style-type: none">  If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on P. 659 	




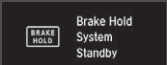









*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability. 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Check System </div> <div>  Brake System Problem </div> <div>  Check System </div> <div>  Check System </div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	<div> <div>  Check System </div> <div>  Electric Parking Brake Problem </div> <div>  Check System </div> <div>  Brake Hold System Problem </div> </div>
		Models with CMBS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.  Load Limit P. 395 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>—</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type






*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 523	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 523	
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 656 	<div> <div> Oil Pressure Low ^{*2}</div> <div> Check Engine Oil Level ^{*3}</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type




*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<p>2.0 L engine models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the engine starts. <p>Except 2.0 L engine models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off either when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. <p> If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 657</p>	<div> <div>*2  Check System</div> <div>*3  Emissions System Problem</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type












*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on when the battery is not charging. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption. ➤ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 656 	



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





*2: Right-hand drive type

*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Shift Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates the current shift position. 	 Shifting P. 412, 414	—
	Transmission System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
	Shift Up Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when shifting up is recommended. 	 Shift Up/Down Indicators* P. 420	—
	Shift Down Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when shifting down is recommended. 	 Shift Up/Down Indicators* P. 420	—
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when 7-speed manual shift mode is applied. 	 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 416	—

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Gear Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates 1st to 6th gear position. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you shift gears very slowly, a different gear position may be displayed for a moment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Shifting P. 418 Under the following conditions, gear positions are not displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The vehicle is stopped. - The select lever is in R position. - The select lever is in N position. The display can be turned ON/OFF in customized features in driver information interface or audio/information screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Customized Features P. 343 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and the beeper sounds for a few seconds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then the indicator comes on. <p>Except Singaporean models with 2.0 L engine</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. <p>All models</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger* has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger* fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you and/or the front passenger* has fastened the seat belt(s) - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. <p>➔ Seat Belt Reminder P. 47</p>	<div> <div>*2</div> <div> Fasten Seat Belt</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div> Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type



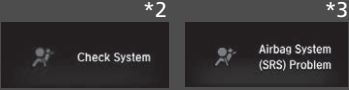


*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 litres left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>Fuel Low</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>Fuel Low</div> </div> <div> <div>Check Fuel Gauge System</div> </div> <div> <div>Fuel Gauge System Problem</div> </div>
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. <p> Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 526</p>	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>Check System</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>Anti-Lock Brake System Problem</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type






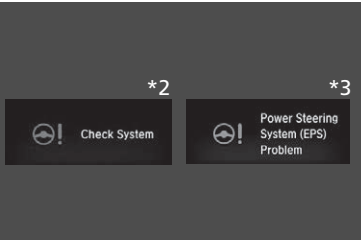
*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supplemental restraint system Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off after a system check up. When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated. 	 Passenger Front Airbag Off System P. 61	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type










*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Door and Hatch Open Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if any door or the hatch is not completely closed. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the hatch is opened while driving. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Goes off when all doors and hatch are closed. 	
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, and goes off when the engine starts. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 660 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type











*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system or hill start assist system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 445 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div> Check System</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div> Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) Problem</div> </div> <div> <div> Check System</div> <div> Hill Start Assist Problem</div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div> Drive Carefully, Systems Initializing...</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div> Drive Carefully, Systems Initializing...</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type






*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on when you partially disable VSA. 	 VSA On and Off P. 446	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>  Vehicle Stability Assist OFF </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF </div> </div>
		2.0 L engine models <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press and hold the  (VSA OFF) button while +R mode is selected. 	 When the drive mode is in +R mode P. 447	<div>  Vehicle Stability Assist System Fully OFF </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing... </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Drive Carefully Systems Initializing... </div> </div>





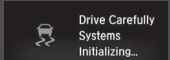
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






*2: Right-hand drive type











*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	<div>Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine</div> Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off. Comes on if the tyre pressure of any of the tyres becomes low. Comes on when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on or blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place, check which tyre's pressure is low, and find the cause. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks P. 661 Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be calibrated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 450 If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare*, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. 	<div>  Check Tyre Pressure </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div>  Check System </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div>  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing... </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



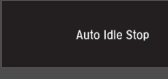





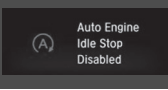
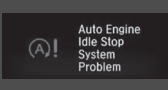
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	<p>Oceanian, Indonesian, and Vietnamese models with 2.0 L engine</p> <p>Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been initialised. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised.  Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 454 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

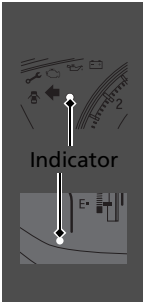


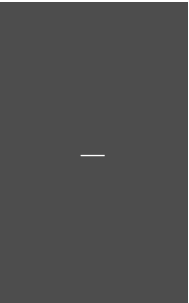
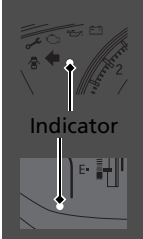

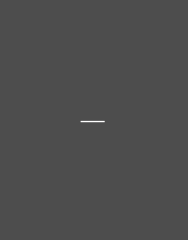
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> While the indicator is on, press the  (display/information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  button is pressed. 	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met. 	 Auto High-Beam* P. 225	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blink when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not blink or blinks rapidly  Replacing Light Bulbs P. 583, 586, 587 	—
		<div>Except 2.0 L engine models</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	 Emergency Stop Signal P. 528	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. 	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on. 	 Light Switches P. 218	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the front fog lights are on. 	 Front* and Rear* Fog Lights P. 222	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on when the rear fog light is on. 	 Front* and Rear* Fog Lights P. 222	—













* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Light Control Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible. 	—
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—
	ECON Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when ECON mode is on. 	ECON Mode* P. 422	
 	Drive Mode Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when each drive mode is selected by drive mode switch. 	Drive Mode Switch P. 429	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off. 	 Auto Idle Stop * P. 423	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the ambient conditions may cause the windows to fog up. Blinks when the ambient conditions may become different from the climate control settings you have selected. Blinks when the  button is pressed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the clutch pedal. The engine automatically restarts.  Auto Idle Stop * P. 423	
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. 	—	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop OFF button. 	 Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF P. 424	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK ^{*1}, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON ^{*1} again. Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	 Security System Alarm P. 204	

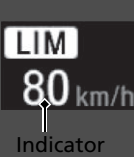



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
 *1  *2	CRUISE MAIN Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the CRUISE button. 	 Cruise Control* P. 431	—
 *1  *2	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control. 	 Cruise Control* P. 431	—
	Oil Monitor System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. 	 Oil Monitor System* P. 549	—
	Cruise Main Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button. 	 Cruise Control* P. 437	—
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button. 	 Adjustable Speed Limiter* P. 441	—








*1:Models with information display

*2:Models with driver information interface

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Cruise Control and Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control. Comes on when you have set a speed for adjustable speed limiter. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Cruise Control* P. 439 ➤ Adjustable Speed Limiter* P. 442 	—
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the starting system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal. Then manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button. 	—
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks if you push the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice after moving the shift lever to P. 	—







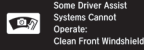
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Brake Depressing Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. • Blinks when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Parking Brake P. 519 	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. • Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blinks while driving - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 523 • Immediately depress the brake pedal. 	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2</div>  <div>Check System</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div>  <div>Road Departure Mitigation System Problem</div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may comes on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the sensor cover. <p> Radar Sensor P. 518</p>	<div> <div>*2</div>  </div> <div> <div>*3</div>  <div>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</div> </div>

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


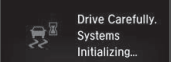
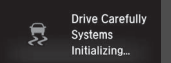
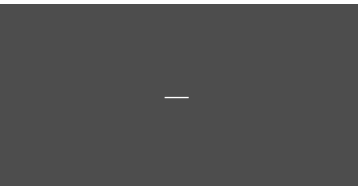
*2: Right-hand drive type

*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  Front Sensor Camera P. 516 	<div> <div>*1</div>  </div> <div> <div>*2</div>  </div>
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.  Front Sensor Camera P. 516 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. 	<div> <div>*1</div>  </div> <div> <div>*2</div>  </div>





*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the road departure mitigation system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*1</div> <div>  </div> </div> <div> <div>*2</div> <div>  </div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 📖 Load Limit P. 395 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1: Right-hand drive type


*2: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1}, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow*. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2 ACC Check System</div> <div>*3 ACC Adaptive Cruise Control Problem</div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow* is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</div> <div>*3  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may comes on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. ACC with Low Speed Follow* has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.  Load Limit P. 395 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	—

*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2:Right-hand drive type




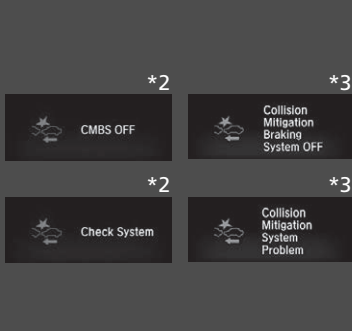
*3:Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488 	—
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*2</div> <div>LKAS Check System</div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>LKAS Lane Keeping Assist Problem</div> </div>
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 502 	—

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type



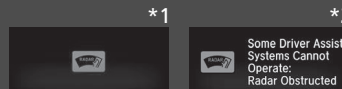
*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on constantly without the CMBS off - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 462 	

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.








*2: Right-hand drive type

*3: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the sensor cover. <p> Radar Sensor P. 518</p>	


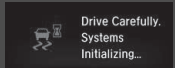
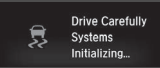

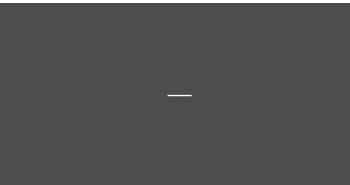
*1: Right-hand drive type

*2: Left-hand drive type

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.  Front Sensor Camera P. 516 	<div> <div>*1  </div> <div>*2  <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p> </div> </div>
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.  Front Sensor Camera P. 516 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera. 	<div> <div>*1  </div> <div>*2  <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield</p> </div> </div>

*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	<div> <div>*1</div>  </div> <div> <div>*2</div>  </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicator may comes on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight.  Load Limit P. 395 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	

*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type


Information Display Warning and Information Messages*







The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ Checking the Battery P. 603
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON, without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➤ Replacing the Button Battery P. 606













* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div><div>*1</div><div></div><div>*2</div><div>Door & Hatch Open</div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears if any door or the hatch is not completely closed.• Appears if any door or the hatch is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Goes off when all doors and the hatch are closed.
<div>Models with parking sensor system</div> <div><div>Check System</div><div></div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.• If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
<div>Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot.</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	<div> Overheating P. 653</div>

*1:Right-hand drive type
*2:Left-hand drive type








Message	Condition	Explanation
<div> <div>*2</div> <div>  Check Charging System </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Charging System Problem </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  Checking the Battery P. 603
<div> <div>*2</div> <div>  </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Outside Temperature Low </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON *1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
<div> <div>*4</div> <div>  Check System </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Starter System Problem </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the starter system has a problem. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> As a temporary measure, hold the ignition switch to START *1 for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal (manual transmission only), and manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
<div> <div>*2</div> <div>  Service Due Soon A </div> </div> <div> <div>*3</div> <div>  Maintenance Due Soon A </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon. Consequently, Service Due Now*2/Maintenance Due Now*3 and Service Over Due*2/Maintenance Past Due*3. 	 Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information P. 549, 553

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Right-hand drive type

*3: Left-hand drive type

*4: Right-hand drive type with the keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div><div>Continuously variable transmission models</div><div>Manual transmission models</div><div> Apply Brake Pedal</div><div> Brake Hold Disabled Apply Brake Pedal</div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Immediately depress the brake pedal.
<div> Brake Hold System OFF</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 523
<div><div>*1  To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</div><div>*2  To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Fasten the driver's seat belt.  Automatic Brake Hold P. 523



*1:Right-hand drive type
*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div>Continuously variable transmission models</div> <div>Manual transmission models</div> <div>To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push</div> <div>To Disable Brake Hold: Brake + Push</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 523
<div>*1</div> <div>Parking Brake Engaged</div> <div>*2</div> <div>Parking Brake Engaged</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Automatic Brake Hold P. 523 ➤ Parking Brake P. 519
<div>Continuously variable transmission models</div> <div>Manual transmission models</div> <div>To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push</div> <div>To Release Parking Brake: Brake + Push</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Parking Brake P. 519


*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type



Australian, New Zealand and Vietnamese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div> <div>Except 2.0 L engine models</div>  </div> <div> <div>2.0 L engine models</div>  </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed. 	<p>➡ Seat Belt Reminder P. 47</p>

Oceanian models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm. 	<p>➡ Speed Alarm* P. 175</p>



Models with automatic lighting control system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div>*1</div>  Check System <div>*2</div>  Light Control System Problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type




Models with LED headlight

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div> <div>*1</div> <div>  Check Headlights </div> </div> <div> <div>*2</div> <div>  Headlight Problem </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when there is a problem with the headlights. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have the vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

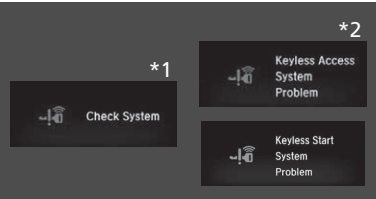
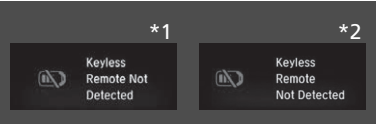
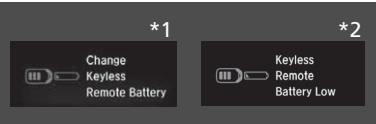
*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Models without keyless access system







Message	Condition	Explanation
<div>  Return IGN Switch To (0) Position </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key.
<div>  Ignition Key </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the key from the ignition switch.
<div>  Accessory (I) Position </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.) 	—

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when you close the door with the power mode on without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door. ➡ Keyless Remote Reminder P. 215
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Replace the battery as soon as possible. ➡ Keyless Remote* P. 607




*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type






Message	Condition	Explanation
<div>Continuously variable transmission models</div> <div>Manual transmission models</div> <div>  To Start Engine: Brake + Push </div> <div>  To Start Engine: Clutch + Push </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. 	<p>➤ Starting the Engine P. 404</p>
<div>*1</div> <div>  To Unlock Wheel: Push + Turn </div> <div>*2</div> <div>  To Unlock Wheel: Push + Rotate </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the steering wheel is locked. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button.
<div>*1</div> <div>  To Turn Vehicle Off: Push Twice </div> <div>*2</div> <div>  To Switch Vehicle OFF: Push Twice </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice with your foot off the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or the clutch pedal (manual transmission) to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

*1:Right-hand drive type




*2:Left-hand drive type

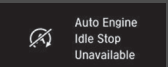
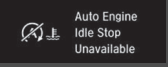
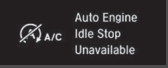
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Accessory Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.	—
 To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Bring the keyless remote in front of the ENGINE START/STOP button to be touched with. ➤ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 646
Continuously variable transmission models  Shift To Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if you push the ENGINE START/STOP button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Move the shift lever to P, then press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice.





Vietnamese models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Washer Fluid Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when washer fluid is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refill washer fluid.  Refilling Window Washer Fluid P. 577
 Check System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
 Check Engine Oil Level	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place.  If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears P. 663






Models with auto idle stop

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Start Engine: Clutch + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The bonnet is open. There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow the normal procedure to start the engine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Starting the Engine P. 401, 404
 <p>Shift To Neutral</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you move the shift lever from N to any other position without depressing the clutch pedal while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine will not start even when the battery charge becomes low. Shift to N to avoid the battery charge becomes low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Auto Idle Stop* P. 423
 <p>Fully Depress Clutch Pedal</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears in amber when the following conditions are kept while Auto Idle Stop is in operation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You are not wearing a seat belt. The shift lever is in any position except N. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depress the clutch pedal. Wear the seat belt immediately, and continue to keep the shift lever in N next time Auto Idle Stop activates.

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Auto Engine Idle Stop Unavailable</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason. • Appears when the engine restarts automatically. • Appears when the battery temperature is around 5°C or lower. 	<p>➡ Auto Idle Stop Activates When: P. 425</p>
 <p>Auto Engine Idle Stop Unavailable</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is too low or high. 	<p>➡ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when: P. 425</p>
 <p>Auto Engine Idle Stop Unavailable</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the automatic climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant. 	<p>➡ Auto Idle Stop Activates When: P. 425</p>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Auto Engine Idle Stop Unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low. Appears when the battery is low performance. 	<p>➔ Auto Idle Stop* P. 423</p>
 Auto Engine Idle Stop Engine Will Restart Soon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The battery charge level is low. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.
 Auto Engine Idle Stop Enabled	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you turn the Auto Idle Stop system ON. 	<p>➔ Auto Idle Stop* P. 423</p>
 Hood Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the bonnet is opened. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Close the bonnet.


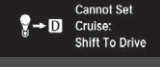



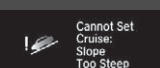
Models with CMBS


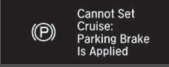
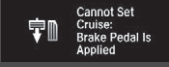
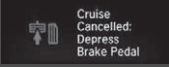
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when ACC has been automatically cancelled. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the -/SET button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the -/SET button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stopped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473


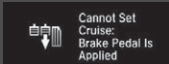


Message	Condition	Explanation
<div> <div>*1 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High</div> <div>*2 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the speed, then set ACC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<div> <div>*1 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High</div> <div>*2 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive vehicle speed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the speed, then reset ACC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<div> <div>*1 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too Low</div> <div>*2 Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too Low</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too low for you to set ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raise the speed, then set ACC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<div> <div>*1 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too Low</div> <div>*2 Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too Low</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive low vehicle speed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raise the speed, then reset ACC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<div> <div>*1 To Resume Cruise: Use "RES/+ Switch"</div> <div>*2 To Resume Cruise: Use "RES/+ Switch"</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press the RES/+ or -/SET button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
<div> <div>*1 Cruise Cancelled: Loss Of Traction</div> <div>*2 Cruise Cancelled: Loss Of Traction</div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488

*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type


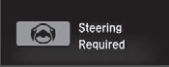
Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>Continuously variable transmission models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the shift lever is moved into any position other than D or S while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
<p>Continuously variable transmission models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the shift lever is in any position other than D or S. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Parking Brake P. 519
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the parking brake is applied. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Parking Brake P. 519
Continuously variable transmission models 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473
Continuously variable transmission models 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if ACC is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately depress the brake pedal.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 473 ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488 ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 462
<p>Manual transmission models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the RES/+ or –/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<p>Manual transmission models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when pressing the RES/+ or –/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the clutch pedal is depressed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC cannot be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488
<p>Manual transmission models</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the clutch pedal is applied too long while ACC is in operation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ACC has been automatically cancelled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488




*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 502
	Road Departure Mitigation System <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. <p>When you selected Warning Only</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. <p>When you selected Normal, Delayed^{*1}/Wide^{*2} or Early^{*1}/Narrow^{*2}</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 510 You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. Normal, Delayed^{*1}/Wide^{*2}, Warning Only, and Early^{*1}/Narrow^{*2} can be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Customized Features P. 343
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.



*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div> <div>*1</div> <div>  </div> </div> <div> <div>*2</div> <div>  </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.  Indicators P. 104







*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<div>Road Departure Mitigation System</div> <div>When you selected Early^{*1}/Narrow^{*2}</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	—
<div>2.0 L engine models</div> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when pressing the RES/+ or -/SET button while the VSA is completely disabled. ➡ When the drive mode is in +R mode P. 447	<ul style="list-style-type: none">ACC cannot be set. ➡ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 488



*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
 *1  *2 Auto High-Beam Problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
 *1  *2 Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. <p>  Radar Sensor P. 518  Honda Sensing* P. 459 </p>

*1:Right-hand drive type



*2:Left-hand drive type

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.Disappears - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Front Sensor Camera P. 516➤ Honda Sensing* P. 459
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front.May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera.<ul style="list-style-type: none">➤ Front Sensor Camera P. 516➤ Honda Sensing* P. 459

*1:Right-hand drive type







*2:Left-hand drive type

Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Start Driving: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start. 	 Remote Engine Start * P. 406

* Not available on all models









2.0 L engine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<div><div>*1  Check System</div><div>*2  Rev Match System Problem</div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with a system related to Rev Match System while the system is activated by customization.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
<div> Check System</div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears when there is a problem with the pop-up hood system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.  Pop-up Hood System Care P. 72
<div><div>*1  Check System</div><div>*2  Suspension System (ADS) Problem</div></div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Appears if there is a problem with the adaptive damper system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this message appeared, your vehicle has normal damping ability without the adaptive damper feature.


*1:Right-hand drive type

*2:Left-hand drive type

2.0 L engine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Drive Mode Change Unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears if the drive mode cannot be changed due to certain situations, such as a system error or adverse driving conditions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Drive Mode Switch P. 429
 Road Departure Mitigation System Unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is in +R mode and you press the Road Departure Mitigation button after you have deactivated VSA by pressing and holding the  (VSA OFF) button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Drive Mode Switch P. 429 ➤ VSA On and Off P. 446
 Collision Mitigation Braking System Unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is in +R mode and you press the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) button after you have deactivated VSA by pressing and holding the  button. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Drive Mode Switch P. 429 ➤ VSA On and Off P. 446
 Some Driver Assist Systems Are OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Appears when the vehicle is in +R mode and you deactivate VSA by pressing and holding the  button. Once you have deactivated VSA, this message will appear again if you put the vehicle into another drive mode. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To reactivate Honda Sensing, press the  button again to turn on VSA. After that, you can reactivate the following features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Road Departure Mitigation System P. 510 ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 462

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


» Tachometer

You can turn on or off the tachometer display.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

» Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

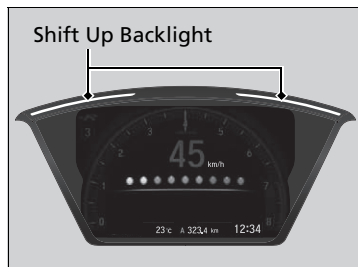
» Temperature Gauge

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➤ **Overheating** P. 653

■ Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*



The shift up backlight blinks and the alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone.

►► Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm*

You can use the customized features to turn the shift up backlight feature and the shift up alarm feature on and off.


► **Customized Features** P. 343

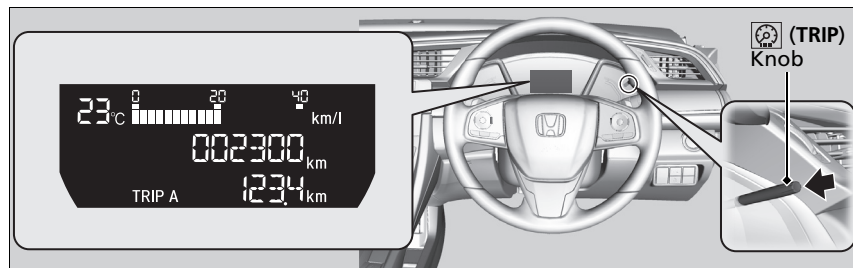
* Not available on all models

Information Display*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life, and other gauges.

Switching the Display


Press the  (TRIP) knob to change the display.

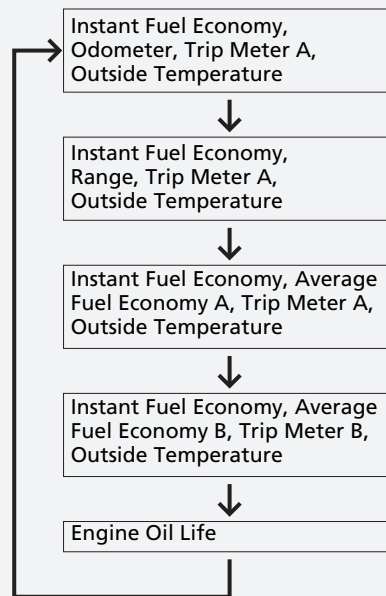


Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

Switching the Display


Each time you press the  knob, the information display changes as follows:



■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life.

 **Oil Monitor System*** P. 549

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

* Not available on all models



■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press and hold the  (TRIP) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
 - The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from -3°C to $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$.
3. Release the  knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
 - The adjustment is complete.

» Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.




Driver Information Interface *

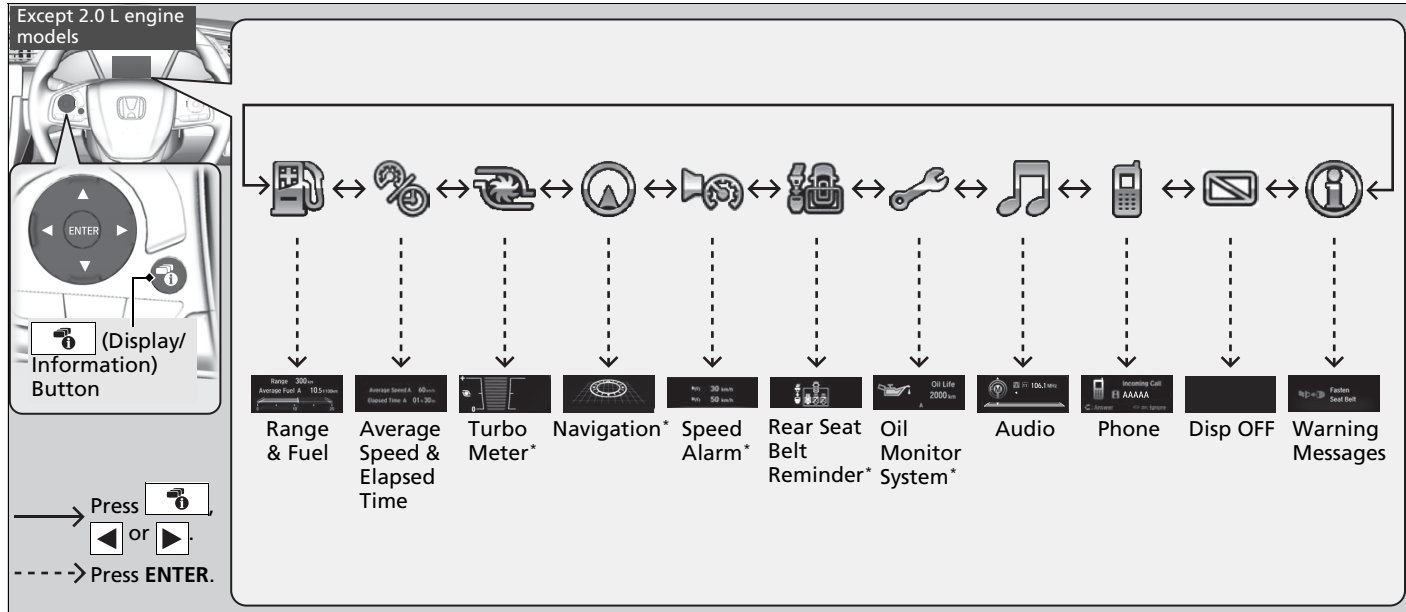
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

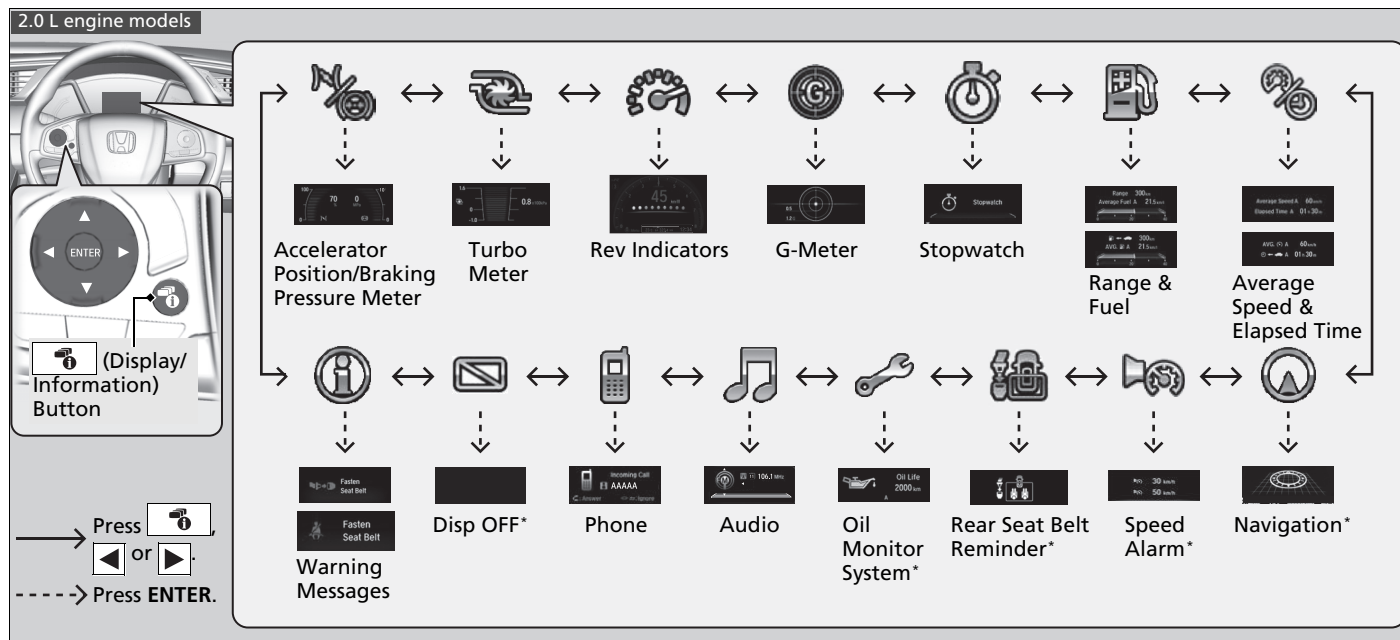
Switching the Display

Main displays


Press the  (display/information) button, and then press  or  to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.

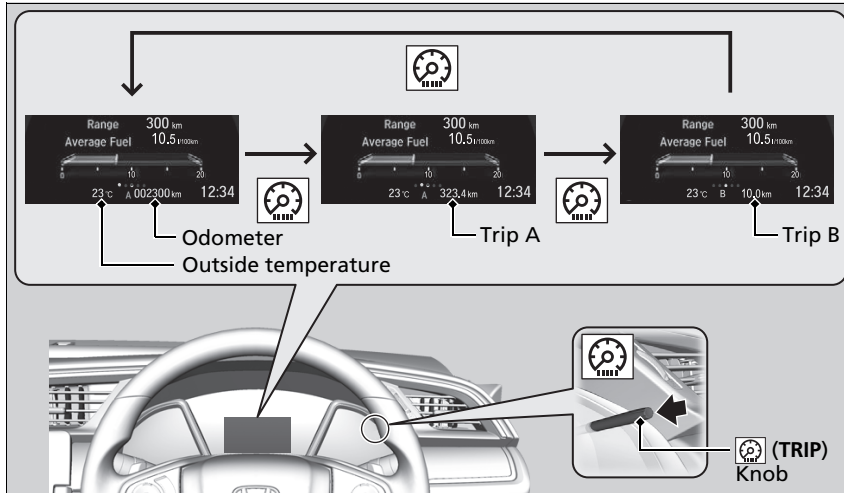


* Not available on all models



■ Sub Display

Press the  (TRIP) knob to change display.




■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.


■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

► Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.

■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

■ Oil Monitor System*

Shows the remaining oil life.

 **Oil Monitor System*** P. 549


» Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

 **Customized Features** P. 343


» Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

 **Customized Features** P. 343

» Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.


 **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Rear Seat Belt Reminder*

Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON *¹, the outside temperature indicator blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

⌘ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 343

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



* Not available on all models

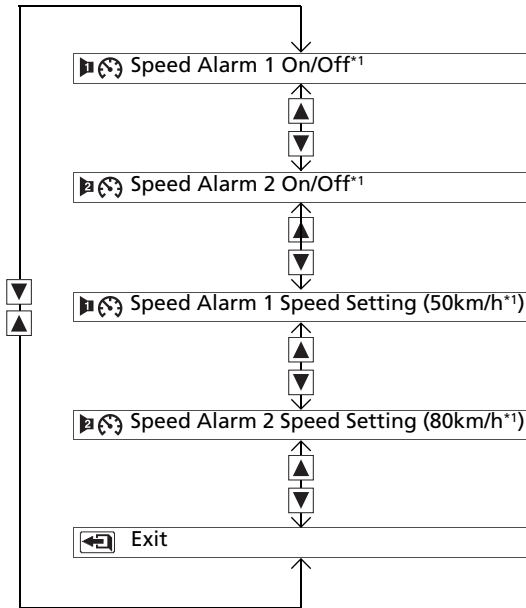
■ Turbo Meter *

When the turbo is producing boost, this meter indicates boost pressure is building.

■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Each time you press the / button, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Navigation *

■ Compass *

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system* or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

➤ **Android Auto** * P. 331

■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

➤ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 280

■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 372

» Navigation *

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ G-Meter*

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.

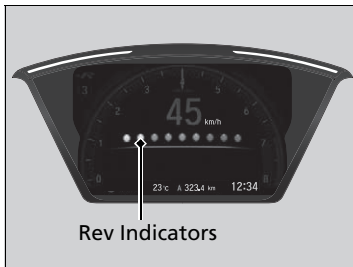
■ Braking Pressure Meter*

Displays the brake pressure in MPa when the brake is applied.

■ Accelerator Position Meter*

Displays the accelerator position in degrees of %.

■ Rev Indicators*

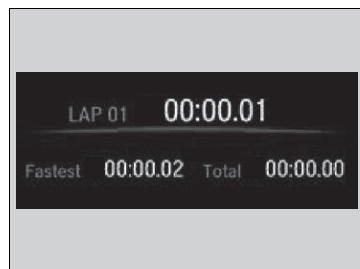
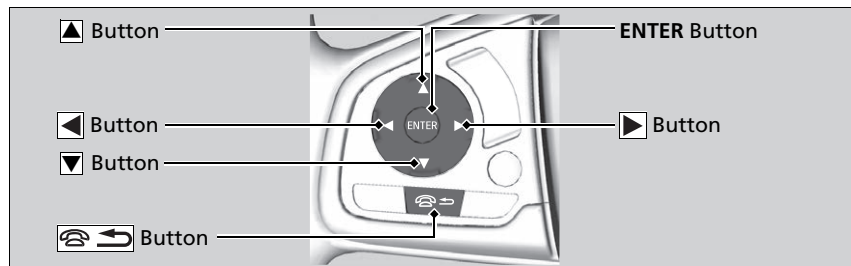


Light up from left to right according to engine speed.

* Not available on all models

■ Stopwatch *

Measures the lap time, and displays the previously measured times, split time and the fastest lap time.



■ Measuring LAP Time

1. Press the **ENTER** button to display the lap time measurement screen.
2. Press the **ENTER** button to start measurement.
3. Press the **ENTER** button again to stop measurement.
 - To measure the time per lap, press the ▲/▼ button at the completion of each lap.
 - To return to the **Stopwatch** screen, press the ☎➡ (Hang-up/back) button






» Stopwatch *

Be sure to use this measurement function only where and when it is safe to do so.

Lap time is displayed from 00:00.00 to 9:59:59.99.



■ Checking and Clearing History

- To check history, press the  button (when lap time is not running) to change the display, then press the  button to scroll through lap times.
 - A maximum of 20 lap times can be stored at a time.
- To clear history, press and hold the  button when lap time is not running.
- To return to the lap time measurement screen, press the  button.
- To return to the **Stopwatch** screen, press the  (Hang-up/back) button.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock*	182
Locking and Unlocking the Doors	
Key	183
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength* ..	185
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	186
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	195
Childproof Door Locks	196
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*	197
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting*	198
Hatch	201
Security System	
Immobilizer System	204

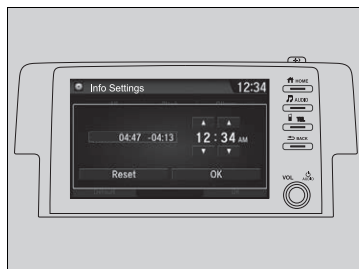
Security System Alarm	204
Opening and Closing the Windows ..	206
Sunroof*	210
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel	
Ignition Switch*	212
ENGINE START/STOP Button*	213
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison	216
Turn Signals	217
Light Switches	218
Front* and Rear* Fog Lights	222
Daytime Running Lights	224
Auto High-Beam*	225
Wipers and Washers	228

Brightness Control	232
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button	234
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	235
Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	236
Power Door Mirrors	237
Adjusting the Seats	239
Interior Convenience Items	
Interior Lights	247
Storage Items	249
Other Interior Convenience Items	258
Climate Control System	
Using Automatic Climate Control	264
Automatic Climate Control Sensors	271





Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON *1.

■ Adjusting the Time



■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select  or  to change hour.
5. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.





▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

You can turn the clock display on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select  or  to change hour.
4. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

Models with navigation system

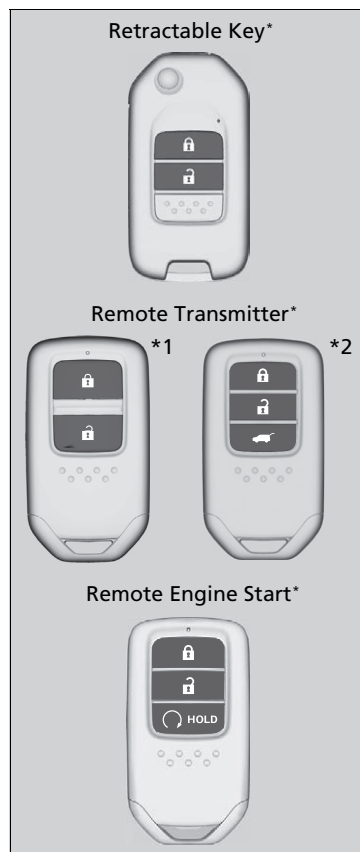
The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and hatch.

*1: Except Vietnamese models

*2: Vietnamese models

* Not available on all models

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 204

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

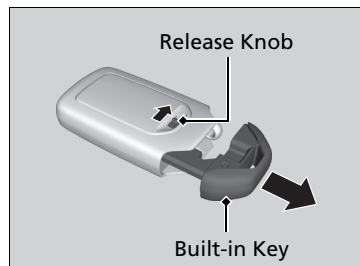
Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

➔ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 406

Continued

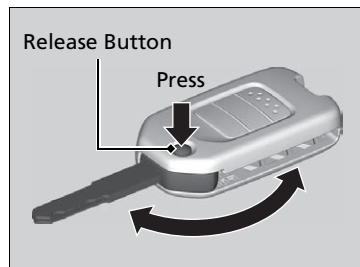
■ Built-in Key*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

■ Retractable Key*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

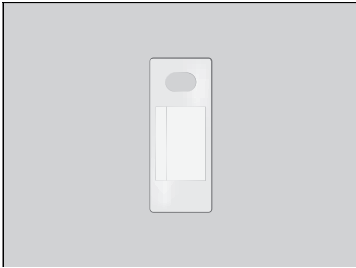
1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
 - Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

▣ Retractable Key*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start.

Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

▣ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

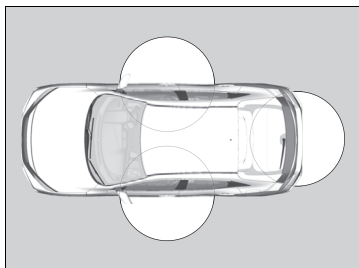
▣ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System *



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and hatch. You can lock/unlock the doors and hatch within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

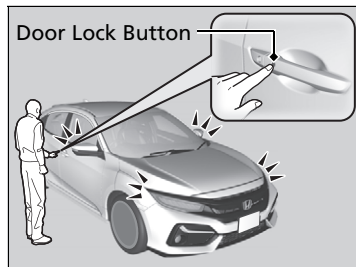
▣ **Interior Lights** P. 247

▣ Using the Keyless Access System *

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

■ Locking the doors and hatch



Except Vietnamese models

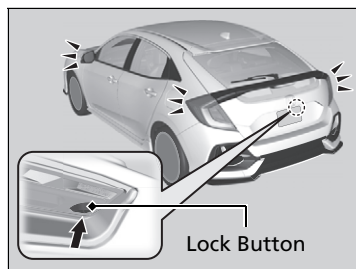
Press the door lock button on the front door or on the hatch.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.

Vietnamese models

Press the door lock button on the front door or on the hatch.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.

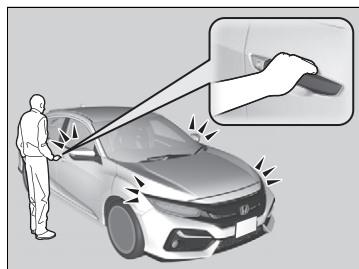


✎ Using the Keyless Access System*

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the hatch with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

* Not available on all models

■ Unlocking the doors and hatch



Except Vietnamese models

Grab the front door handle:

- All doors and the hatch unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

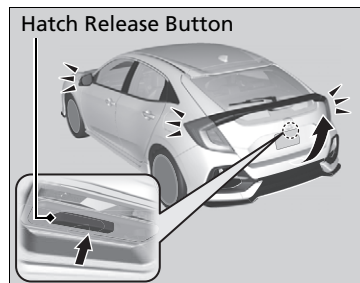
Vietnamese models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- The driver's door unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All doors and the hatch unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once.



Hatch Release Button

Except Vietnamese models

Press the hatch release button.

- All doors and the hatch unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Hatch** P. 202

Vietnamese models

Press the hatch release button.

- The hatch unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once.

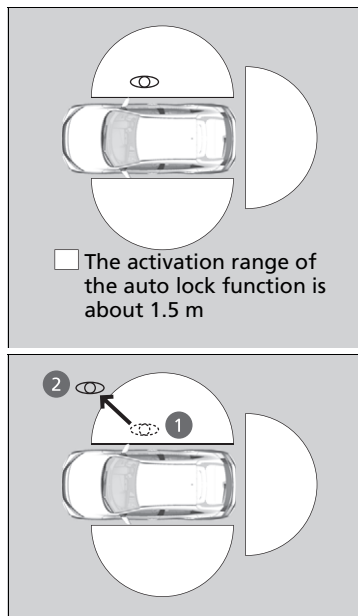
➤ **Opening/Closing the Hatch** P. 202

►► Using the Keyless Access System*

Models with Display Audio

The light flash and beep* and door unlock mode* settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343



■ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock*)

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and hatch will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and hatch are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.

► The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.

► Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and hatch will then lock.

▣ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock*)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

► **Customized Features** P. 343

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and hatch will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or the hatch after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be delayed until all doors and hatch are closed.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The remote is inside the vehicle.
 - The beeper will not sound.
- The remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and hatch are closed.
 - The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
► The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

⊠ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock*)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, hatch or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

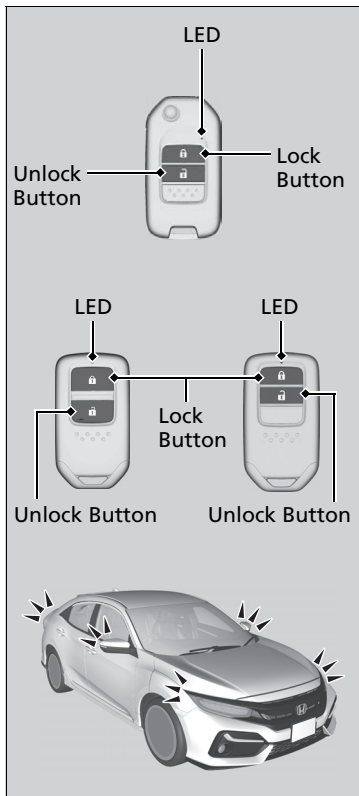
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the hatch.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Except Vietnamese models

■ Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and hatch lock, and the security system sets.

Models with keyless access system

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

- ▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Vietnamese models

■ Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and hatch lock, and the security system sets.

▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the relock timer setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

All models

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

Vietnamese models

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

Except Vietnamese models

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the hatch is open.

Except Vietnamese models

■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

- Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors and hatch unlock.

Vietnamese models

■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

Once:

- Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

- The remaining doors and hatch unlock.

►► Using the Remote Transmitter

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 606

Vietnamese models

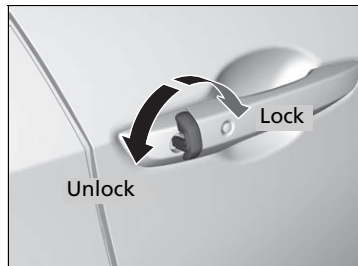
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote transmitter does not work, use the key instead.

➤ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 606



Fully insert the key and turn it.

▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

Vietnamese models

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the hatch.

All models

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

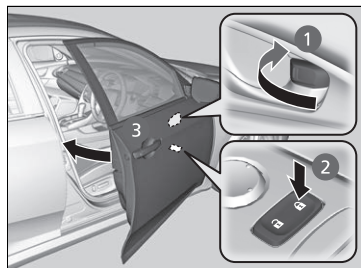
Vietnamese models

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

Models without keyless access system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

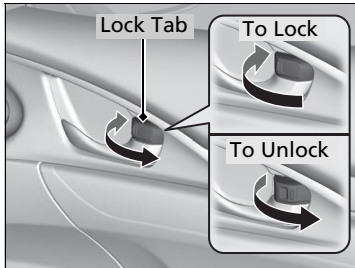
► Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



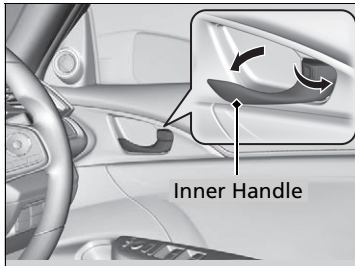
■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



■ Except Vietnamese models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

■ Vietnamese models

Pull the front door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

►► Using the Lock Tab

■ Except Vietnamese models

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Vietnamese models

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the hatch lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

►► Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

■ Except Vietnamese models

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

■ Vietnamese models

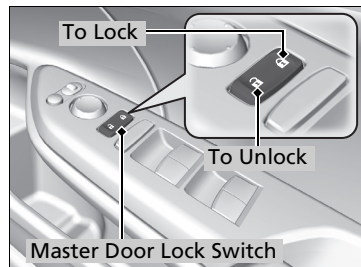
The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

■ All models

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

► **Childproof Door Locks** P. 196

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

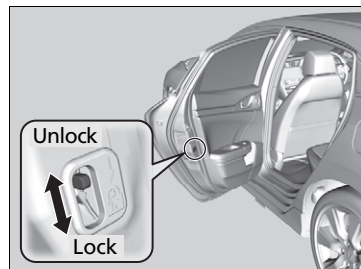


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the hatch.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

▣ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

▣ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and the hatch lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Park unlock mode

All doors and the hatch unlock when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

Manual transmission models

■ Power mode unlock mode

All doors and the hatch unlock when the power mode is out of ON.

» Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

Models without Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

➤ **Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting*** P. 198

* Not available on all models

Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

■ Auto door locking

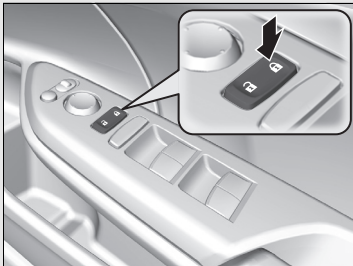
Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode* ¹	All doors and the hatch lock when the vehicle’s speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Park Lock Mode	All doors and the hatch lock when the shift lever is moved out of P with the brake pedal depressed.
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description
Park Unlock Mode* ¹	All doors and the hatch unlock when the shift lever is moved into P with the brake pedal depressed.
Power mode Unlock Mode	All doors and the hatch unlock when the power mode is out of ON.
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

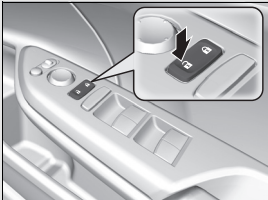
*1 : Default setting

Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode*1	Park Lock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P .		
2	Push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice without depressing the brake pedal.		
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.	Open the driver's door.	
4	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—	
5	<p>Press and hold the right side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click more than five seconds elapsed. Release the switch.</p> 		
6	Move the shift lever to P .	—	
7	<p>Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once without depressing the brake pedal within 20 seconds.</p> <p>► Customization is completed.</p>		

*1: Default setting

Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Steps	Park Unlock Mode*1	Power mode Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Make sure the shift lever is in P .		
2	Push the ENGINE START/STOP button twice without depressing the brake pedal.		
3	The driver's door must be closed at this stage.		Open the driver's door.
4	—	Move the shift lever out of P with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the left side of the master door lock switch on the driver's door. You will hear a click more than five seconds elapsed. Release the switch. <div>  </div>		
6	—	Move the shift lever to P .	—
7	Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once without depressing the brake pedal within 20 seconds. Customization is completed.		

*1: Default setting

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
 - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

 **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

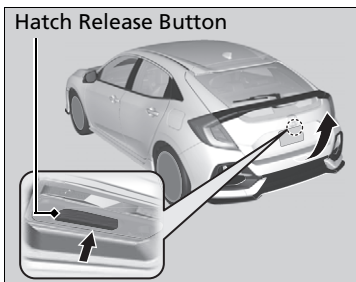
Make sure that all people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the luggage area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Hatch



When all the doors are unlocked or press the hatch unlock button* on the remote transmitter, the hatch is unlocked. Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

Models with keyless access system

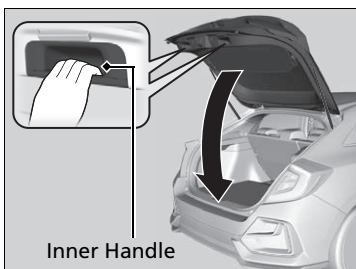
If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the hatch before opening it.

To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

Vietnamese models

If you close the hatch when the driver's door is locked, the hatch locks automatically.

► Some exterior lights flash three times.



►► Opening/Closing the Hatch

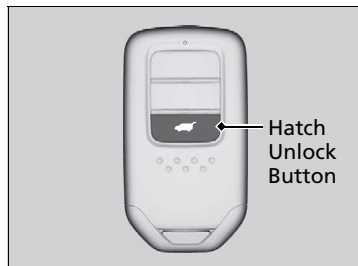
Models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.

Vietnamese models

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the hatch. The beeper sounds and the hatch cannot be closed.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter*



Press the hatch unlock button to unlock the hatch.

▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the hatch using the remote transmitter, when closing, the hatch locks automatically.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the hatch or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

» Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.


Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

» Security System Alarm


Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or turn the ignition switch to ON *. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm


The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK *, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or when the ignition switch is turned to ON *. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

▣ Security System Alarm

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.


If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

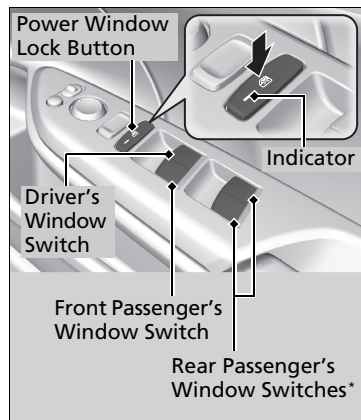
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pressed, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Windows


WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Oceanian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK ^{*1}.

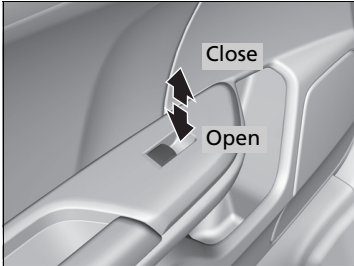
Opening either front door cancels this function.

Except Oceanian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Opening either front door cancels this function.

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*



To open: Push the switch down.

To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

▣ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

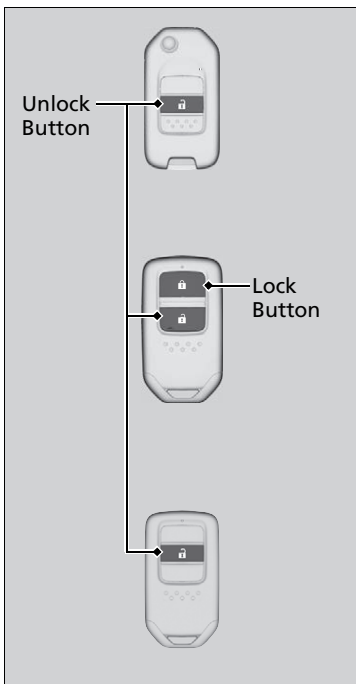
The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

* Not available on all models

Except Thai, Malaysian and Vietnamese models

■ Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

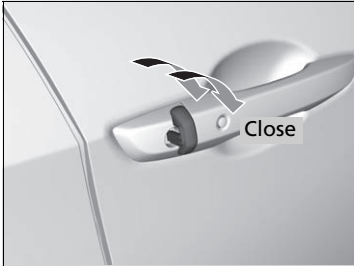
If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

► Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof* will open/close automatically along with them.

Except Thai, Malaysian and Vietnamese models

■ Closing the Windows with the Key



To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

▣ Closing the Windows with the Key

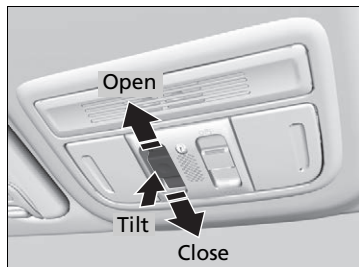
If you close the windows with the key, the sunroof* will close automatically along with them.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

■ Using the Sunroof Switch



■ Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

■ Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the sunroof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

☒ Sunroof*

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

The sunroof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Opening either front door cancels this function.

» Sunroof*

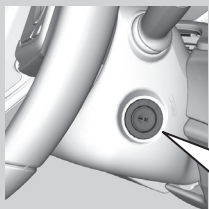
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the sunroof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

▣ **Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote** P. 208

▣ **Closing the Windows with the Key** P. 209

Ignition Switch *





- [0] LOCK:** Insert and remove the key in this position.
- [I] ACCESSORY:** Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.
- [II] ON:** This is the position when driving.
- [III] START:** This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON [II] when you let go of the key.

Ignition Switch *

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **[0]** or ACCESSORY **[I]**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When the warning buzzer sounds, the following messages appear on the driver information interface:

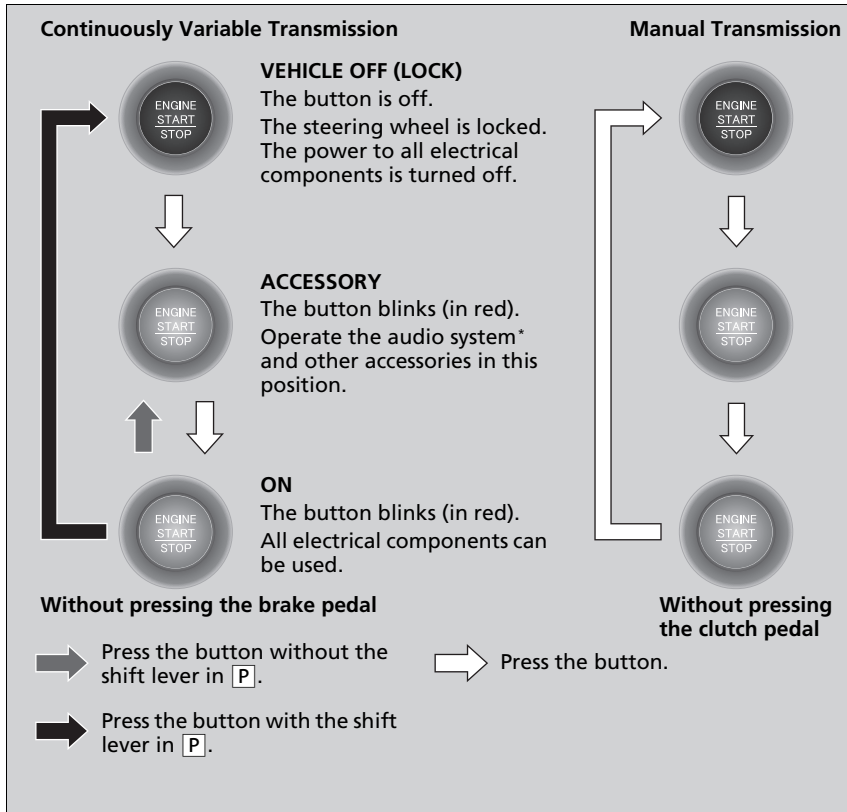
- In LOCK **[0]**: the symbol  with a **Ignition Key**
- In ACCESSORY **[I]**: the symbol  with a **Return**

IGN Switch To (0) Position

If the key won't turn from LOCK **[0]** to ACCESSORY **[I]**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

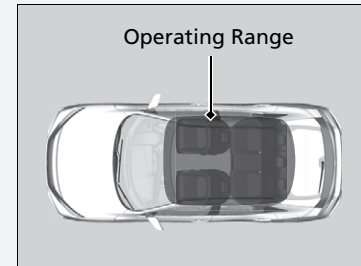
ENGINE START/STOP Button*

■ Changing the Power Mode



►ENGINE START/STOP Button*

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**

P. 646

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** (Continuously Variable Transmission) and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote Reminder

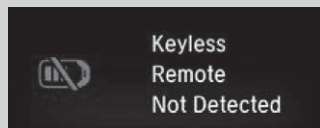
Models with information display



Right-hand drive type with driver information interface



Left-hand drive type



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

▣ Keyless Remote Reminder










When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

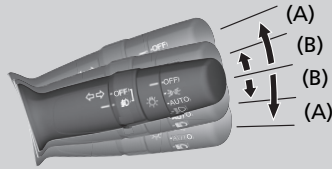
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK 0 (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY I 	ON II 	START III 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.• The steering wheel is locked.• No electrical components can be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off.• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Normal key position while driving.• All electrical components can be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use this position to start the engine.• The ignition switch returns to the ON II position when you release the key.
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON  Button is: Blinking On 	START 
With Keyless Access System and ENGINE START/STOP Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.• The steering wheel is locked.• No electrical components can be used.	Button-Blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Engine is turned off.• Some electrical components such as the audio system* and the accessory power socket can be operated.	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• All electrical components can be used.	Button-On <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.

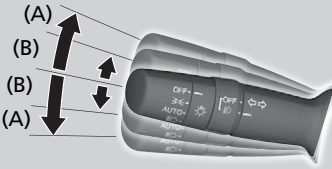
Controls


Turn Signals

Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ (A): Turn signal


Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ (B): One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

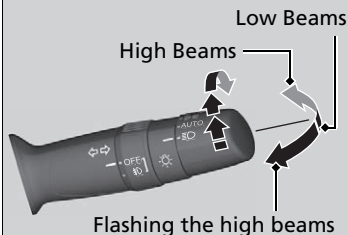
 **Indicators** P. 104

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

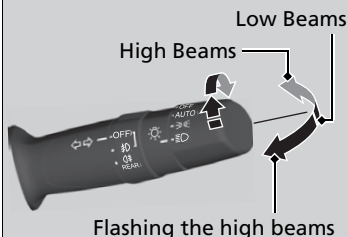
Light Switches


Manual Operation


Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models



Malaysian and Vietnamese models



 Turns on position, side marker*, tail, and rear licence plate lights

 Turns on headlights, position, side marker*, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Malaysian and Vietnamese models

Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** when:

- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Lights On Indicator** P. 121

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Models without automatic headlight adjusting system

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

» Light Switches

Models with halogen headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN Regulation No. 48 Dover Regulation.

Oceanian 1.5 L engine models with LED headlights

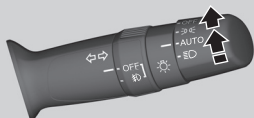
Malaysian models

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

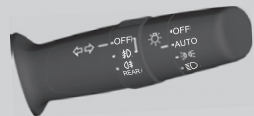
➤ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 458


Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models



Malaysian and Vietnamese models



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

Malaysian and Vietnamese models

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

All models

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

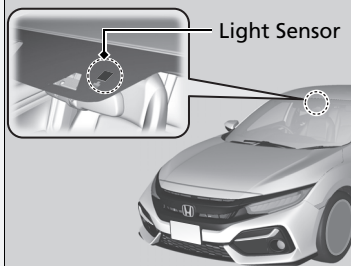
* Not available on all models

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

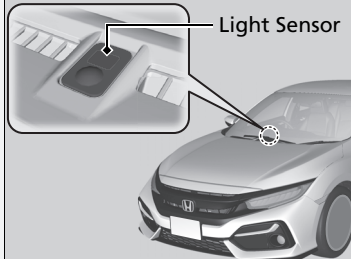
We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models with automatic intermittent wiper



Models without automatic intermittent wiper



■ Headlight Integration with Wipers*


The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.


The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

Models with Vietnamese models

However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO*** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


* Not available on all models

►► Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*

Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	
High	
Mid	
Low	
Min	Dark

► Customized Features P. 343

►► Headlight Integration with Wipers*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

►► Automatic Lighting Off Feature

Models with Display Audio

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

► Customized Features P. 343

Front* and Rear* Fog Lights

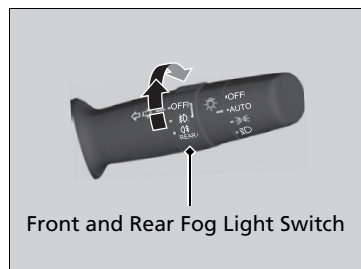
■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

■ Front and Rear Fog Lights*



■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the OFF position to the **F** position. The **F** indicator comes on.

■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

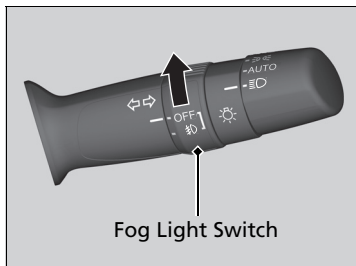
Rotate the switch one position up from the **F** position. The **F** and **R** indicators come on.

■ To turn the rear fog light on



Rotate the switch one position up from the **F** position and then rotate the switch one position down from the **R** position. The **R** indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the OFF position.

■ Front Fog Lights*



■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch to the . The  indicator comes on.

* Not available on all models

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON *1.

Except Malaysian and Vietnamese models

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO*** or **OFF**.

Malaysian and Vietnamese models

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

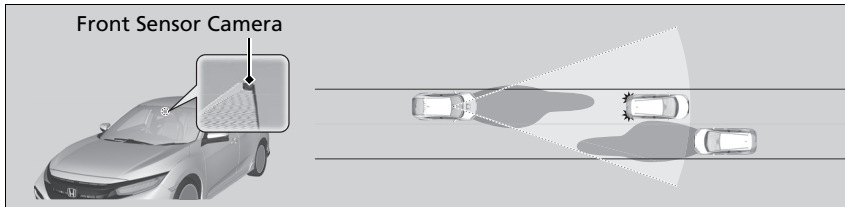
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO*** and it is getting darker outside.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

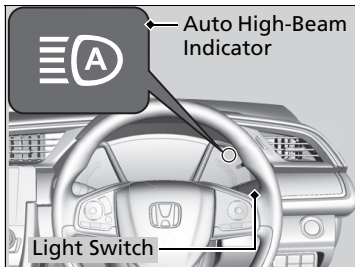
Auto High-Beam*


The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.




How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The ignition switch is in ON *1.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam*

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.



Switching to low beam:

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.


■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.


Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

► To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and hold it over two seconds then release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

► To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

►► How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

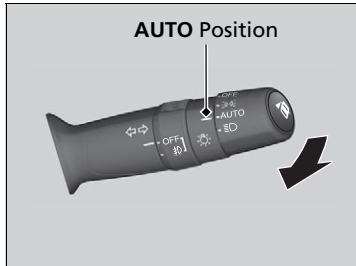
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

■ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.



To turn the system off:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

To turn the system on:

With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

▣ How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

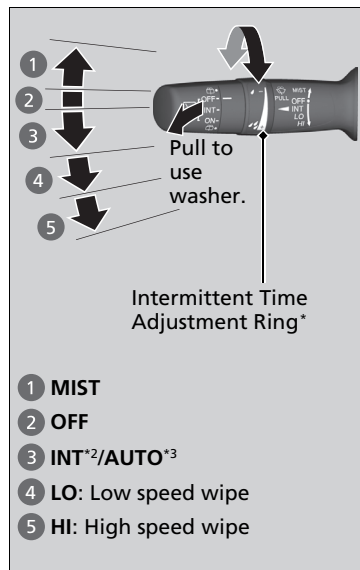
If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON ^{*1}.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*²/AUTO*³, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*2: Models with manual intermittent operation

*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

►► Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

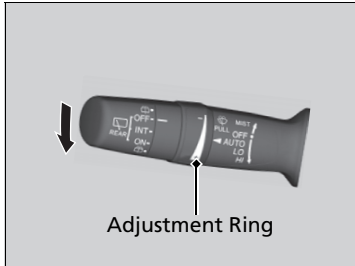
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the **LO** setting become the same.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



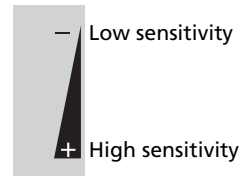
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



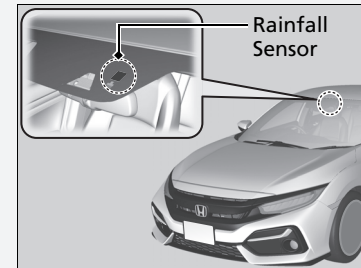
Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [1] or LOCK [0]*1, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



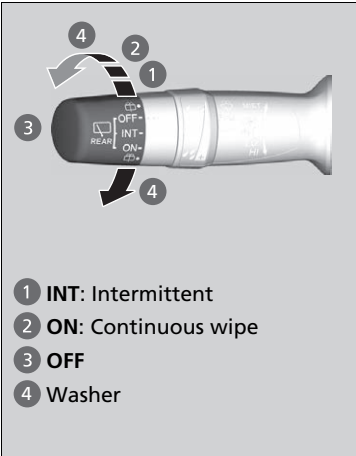
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ()

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

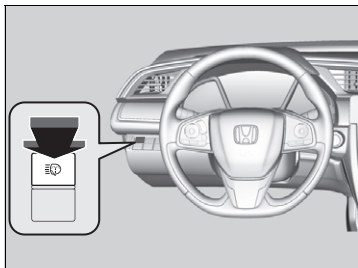
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Windscreen Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe	
High speed wipe	Continuous

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Headlight Washers*



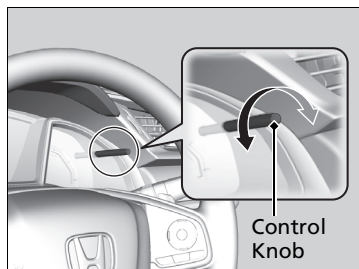
Turn the headlights on and press the headlight washer button to operate. The headlight washers also operate when you turn the windscreen washers for the first time after the power mode is set to ON.

▣ Headlight Washers*

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washers.

* Not available on all models

Brightness Control



When the brightness of the meter will be reduced, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Turn the knob to the right.

Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.

» Brightness Control

Models with automatic lighting control system

Models with Display Audio

By default, the instrument panel switches to night-time mode when the headlights are automatically engaged. You can delay the timing of night-time mode activation when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 343

All models

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The ignition switch is in ON **II***1.

Models with automatic lighting control system

- The light switch is in any position other than **OFF** and it is dark outside.

Models without automatic lighting control system

- The position lights are turned on.

All models

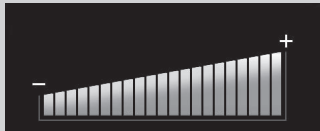
The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with information display



Right-hand drive type with driver information interface




Left-hand drive type



■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

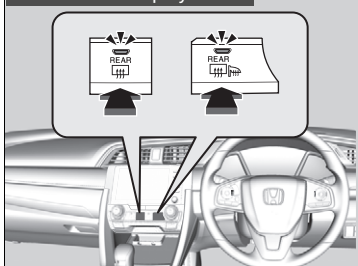
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON *1.

Models without Display Audio




Models with Display Audio



The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

►► Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

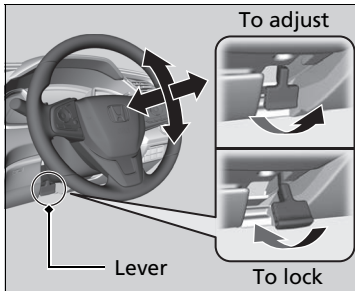
When the ignition switch is turned to ON *1 and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
 - The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

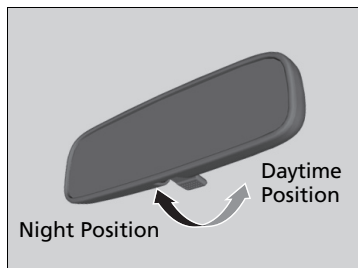
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

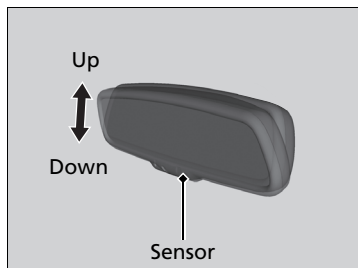
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

» Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

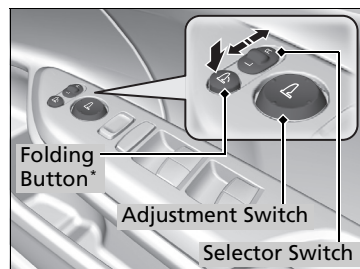
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.


» **Front Seats** P. 239

» Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON *¹.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or press the door lock button on any door.

- The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the hatch using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

- The mirrors start folding out automatically.

⌘ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

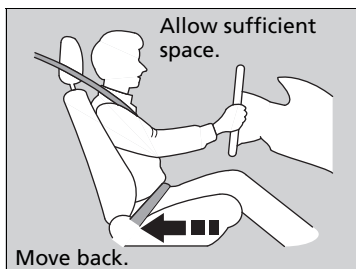
You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

⌘ **Customized Features** P. 343

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Adjusting the Seats

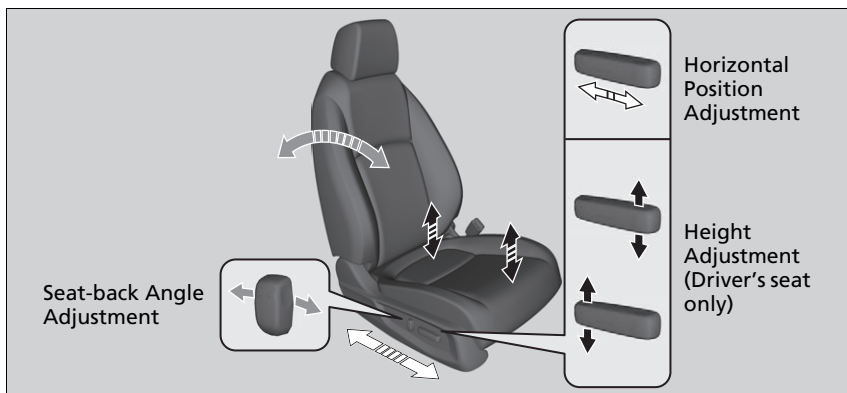
Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)*



Adjusting the Seats

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

* Not available on all models

Continued

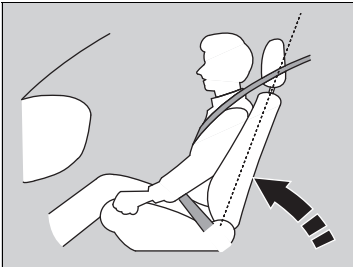
■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



►► Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

►► Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

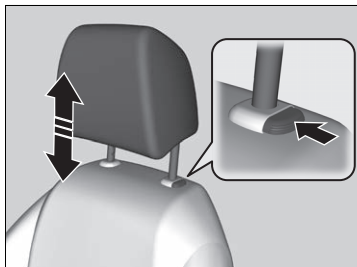
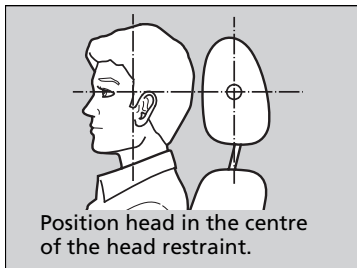
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Front head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

» Head Restraints

Except 2.0 L engine models

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

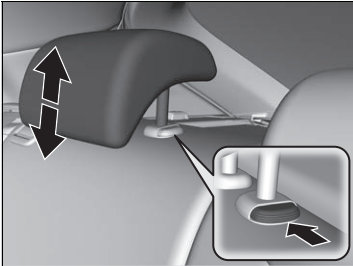
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in a outer back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

Front and rear outer head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

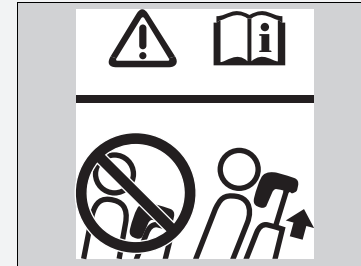
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

▣ Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraints in the rear outer seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



▣ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints*, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

►► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

WARNING

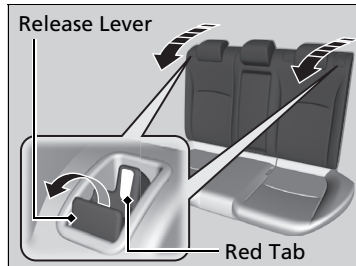
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Rear Seats

Folding Down the Rear Seats

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the rear seat to make room for luggage.



1. Lower the head restraints* to their lowest position.
2. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-back(s) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks, so that the red tabs in the release lever go down.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back.

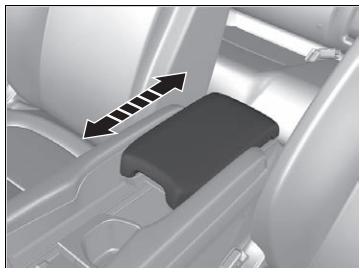
Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

* Not available on all models

Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

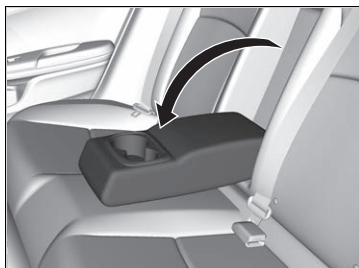


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

To adjust:

Slide the armrest to desired position.

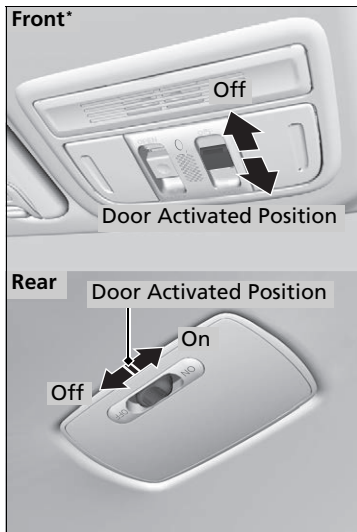
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*



Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models without keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

Models with Display Audio

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 343

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**.

Models with keyless access system

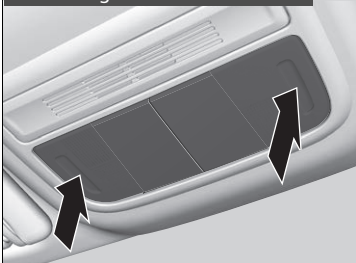
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

* Not available on all models

■ Map Lights

Models without sunroof switch or ambient light



Models with sunroof switch or ambient light



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

►► Interior Light Switches

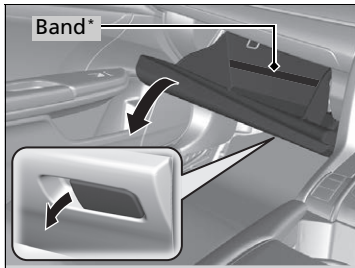
If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

►► Map Lights

When the front interior light switch* is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

Storage Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Glove Box

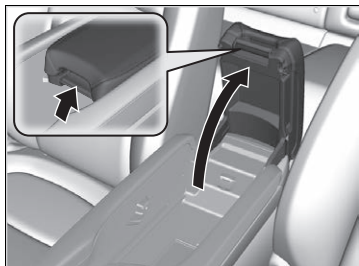
⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

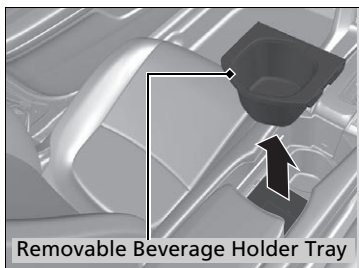
* Not available on all models

■ Console Compartment



Your vehicle has a multi-function centre console. It includes a storage compartment and an armrest.

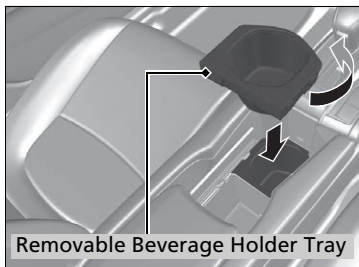
Slide the armrest to the rearmost position. Pull up on the handle to open the console compartment.



Removable Beverage Holder Tray

Except Vietnamese models

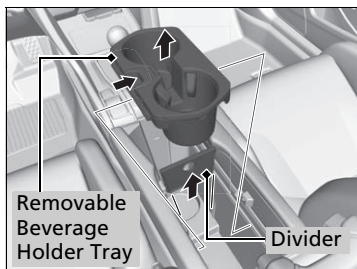
You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray.



Removable Beverage Holder Tray

If you want to make greater use of the console box:

1. Raise the removable beverage holder tray and reverse its orientation.
2. Put the removable beverage holder on the beverage holder which is in front.

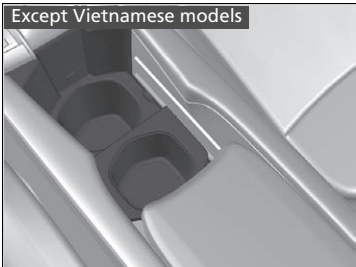


Vietnamese models

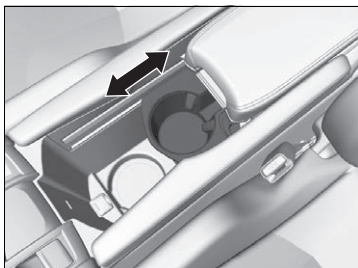
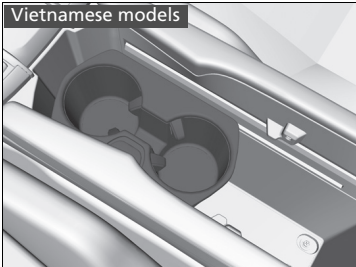
You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray and a divider.

■ Beverage Holders

Except Vietnamese models



Vietnamese models



■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

- Move the armrest rearward to use the beverage holders.

Vietnamese models

To place a short beverage container:

Move the removable beverage holder tray forward.

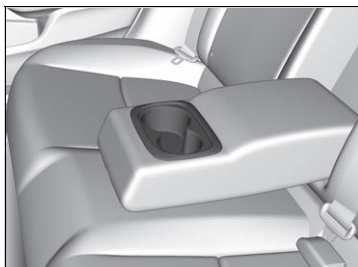
To place a tall beverage container: Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

►► Beverage Holders

NOTICE

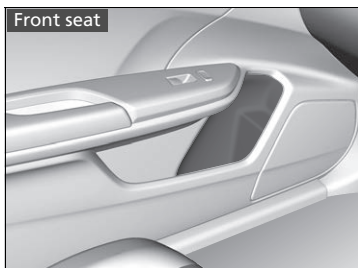
Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



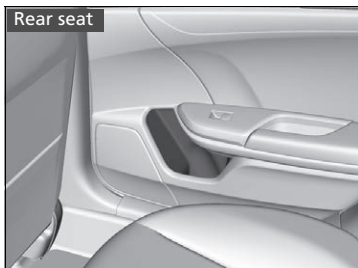
■ **Rear seat beverage holders***

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.



Front seat

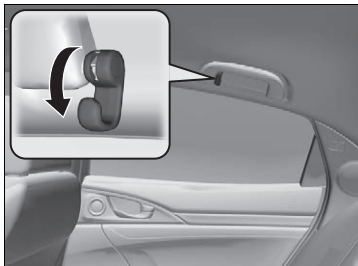
■ **Door beverage holders**



Rear seat

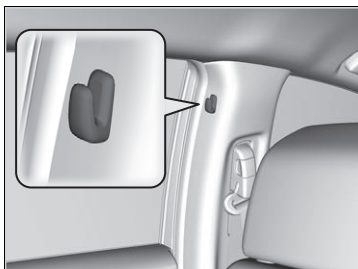
* Not available on all models

■ Coat Hooks



Indonesian models with continuously variable transmission

There is a coat hook on the rear right grab handle. Pull it down to use it.



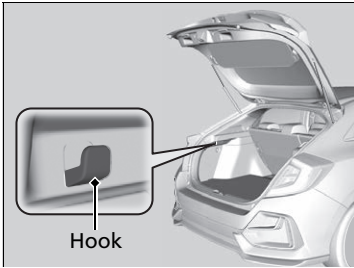
All models

There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

►► Coat Hooks

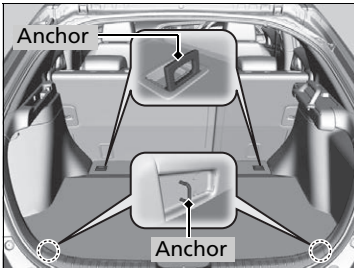
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

■ Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

» Luggage Hook

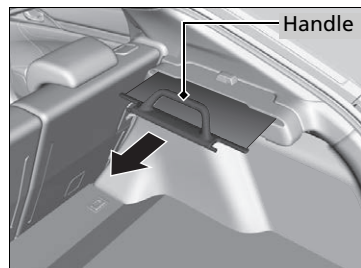
NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

» Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

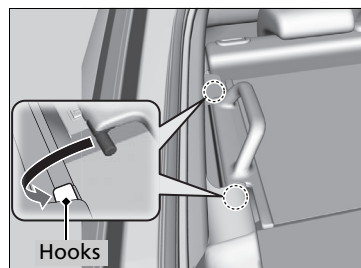
■ Luggage Area Cover*



The luggage area cover can be used to conceal your items and protect them from direct sunlight.

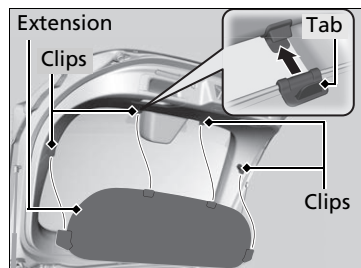
■ To extend:

Pull the handle fully towards the hook on the other side and let the hook catch hold of the handle.



■ To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



■ Luggage area cover extension

The extension is attached at the back of the hatch by four clips. It extends the covering area when you close the hatch. To remove, unclip the extension from the hatch. When reinstalling the extension, make sure that the tabs come to the near side.

►► Luggage Area Cover*

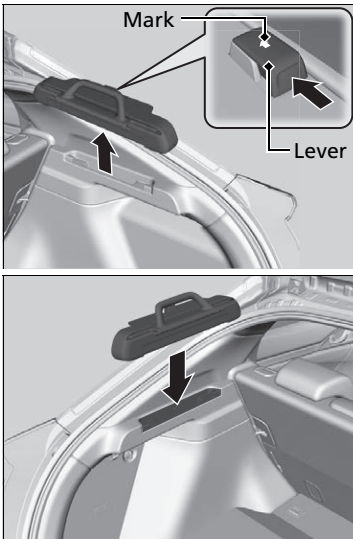
Do not access parcels in the luggage area while driving.

This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:

- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.





■ **To remove:**

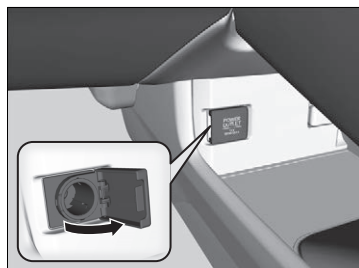
Push and hold the lever in the direction of the arrow mark on the housing and lift the housing out of its position.

The housing can be installed on either side of the luggage area.

Other Interior Convenience Items

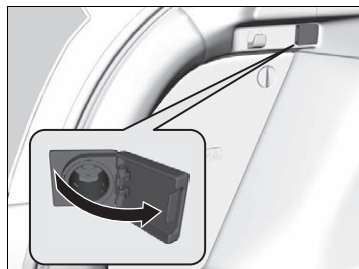
■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY  or ON *1.



■ Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



■ Accessory power socket (luggage area)*

Open the cover to use it.

» Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.


To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

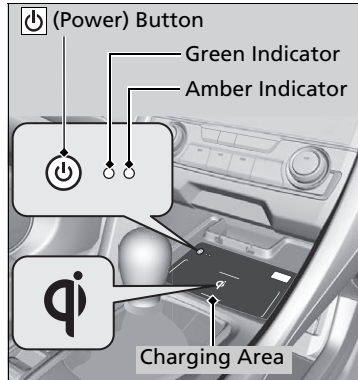
When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the power socket.


*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
 - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

►► Wireless Charger*

⚠ WARNING

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.


- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

■ When charging does not start


Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ Wireless Charger*

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

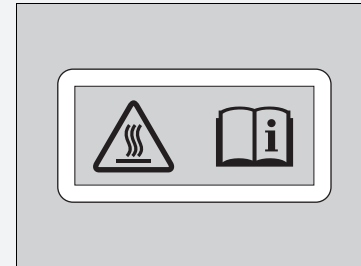
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Wireless Charger*

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors and the hatch are closed
- to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

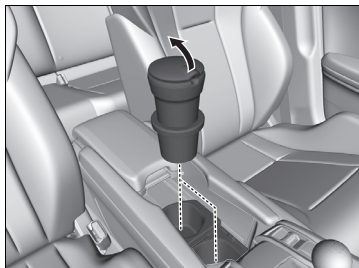


Burn risk:

Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

* Not available on all models

■ Ashtray*



The ashtray that fits in the front beverage holders is removable. Pull up on the lid to open.

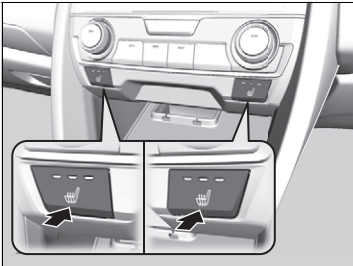
▣ Ashtray*

To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, use the ashtray only for discarding cigarettes and cigars.

■ Seat Heaters *



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)

Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)

Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)

Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

►► Seat Heaters *

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

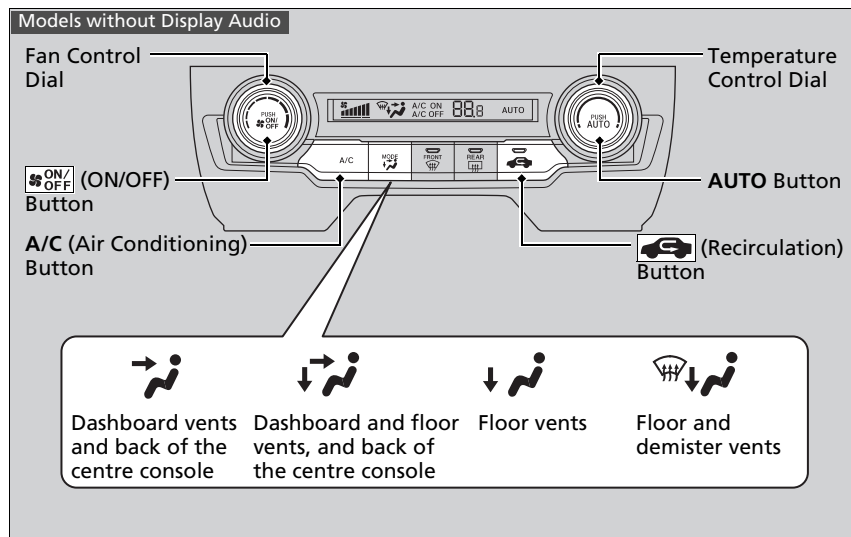
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons/icons* are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button/icon* that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button/icon* that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.

If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

All models

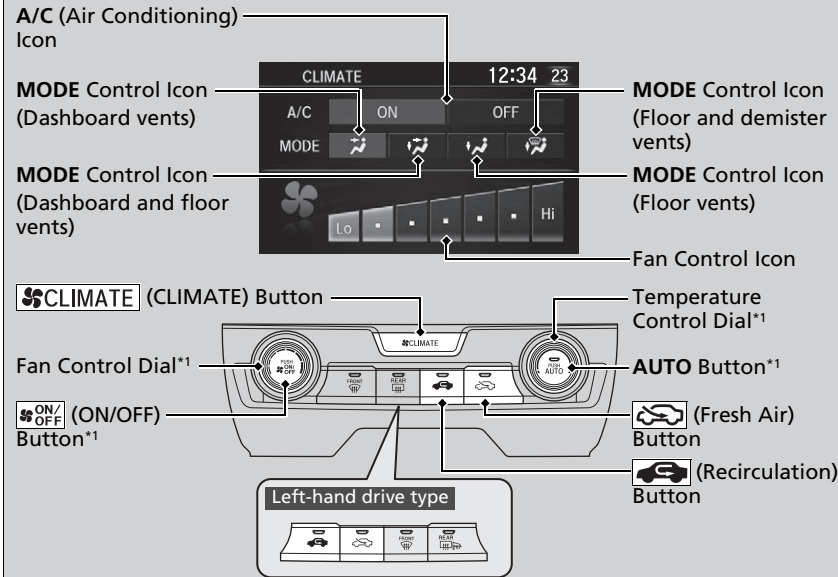
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button



*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

►► Using Automatic Climate Control

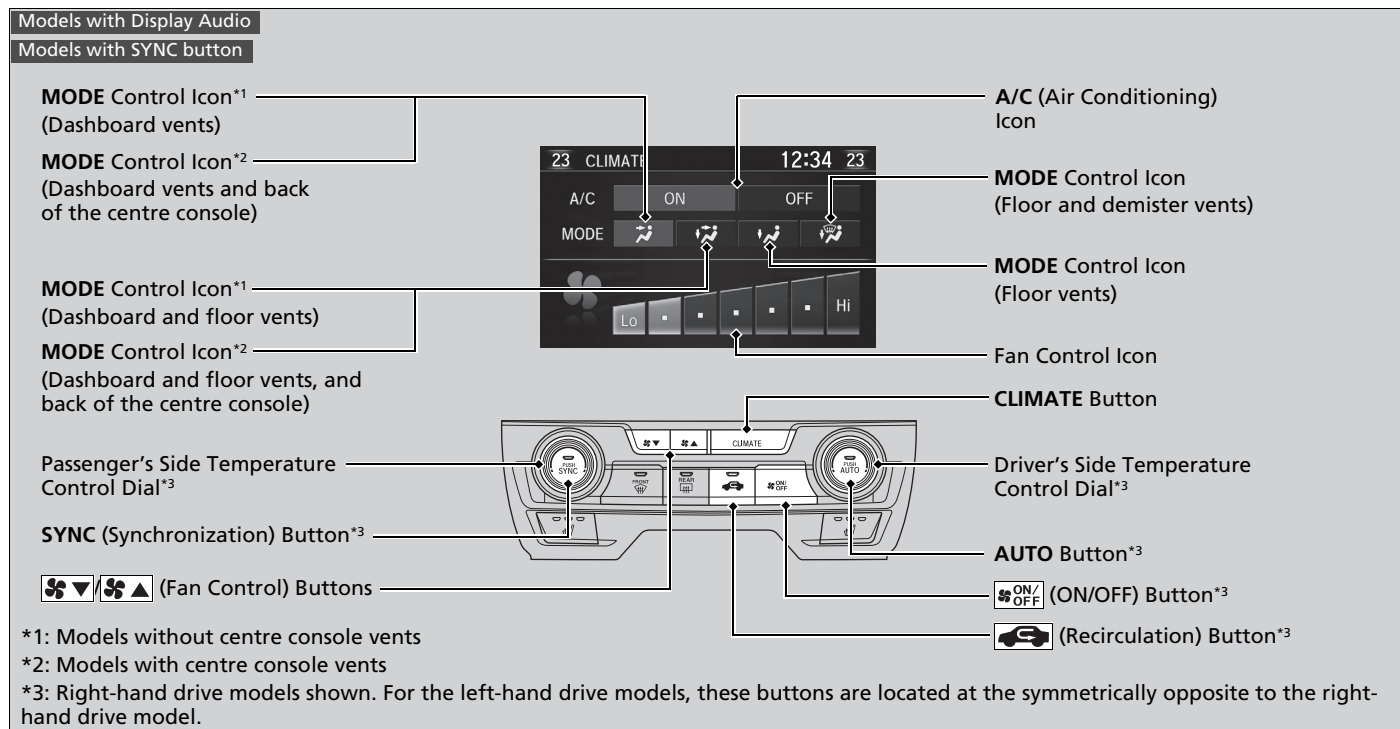
Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

Models with ECON button

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models with Display Audio

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.




Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes



Models without fresh air button


Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Models with fresh air button

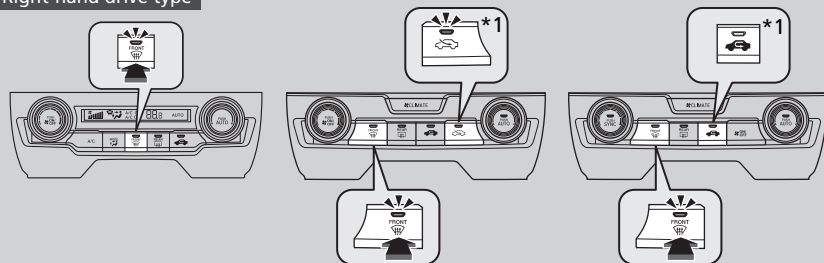
Press the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

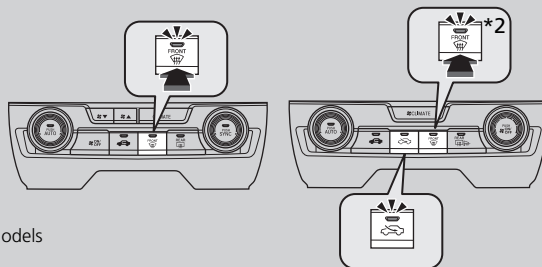
 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Right-hand drive type




Left-hand drive type





*1: Australian and New Zealand models

*2: Vietnamese models


Australian, New Zealand and Vietnamese models

Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Except Australian, New Zealand and Vietnamese models

Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on. Press  the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

All models

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.


Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

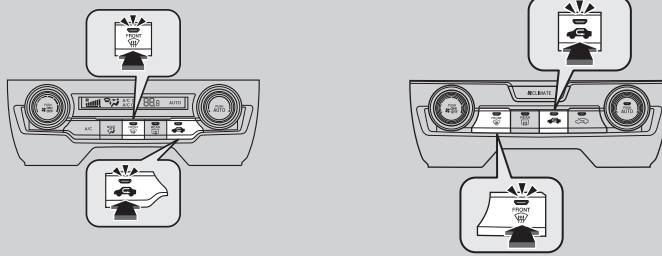
Models with Auto Idle Stop

To defog during the Auto Idle Stop, restart the engine as follows.

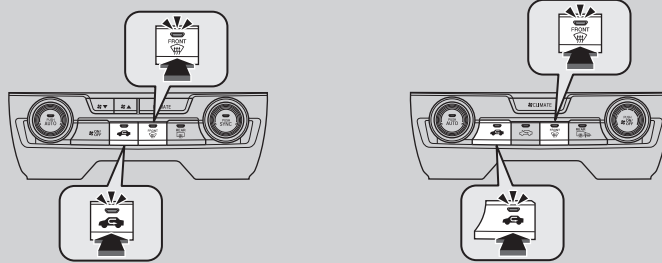
1. Make sure the shift lever is in **N**.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Press the  button.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type

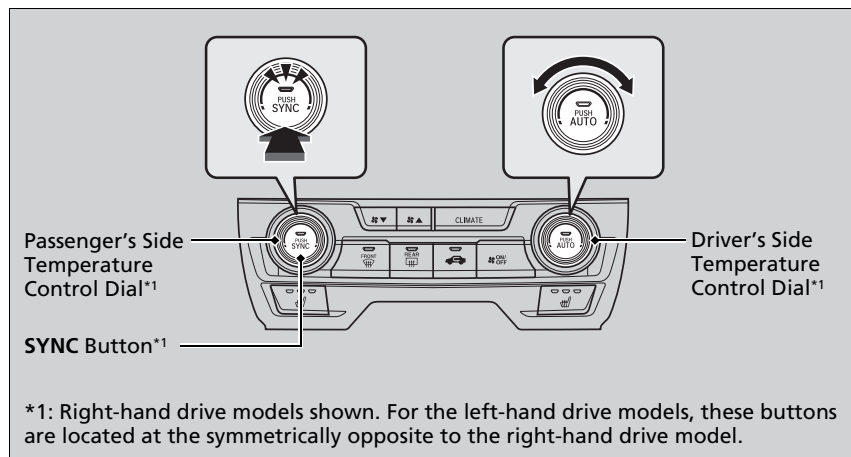


1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode*




You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
 - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

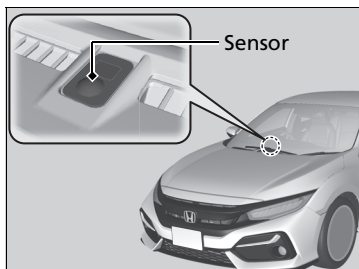
Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

► Synchronization Mode*

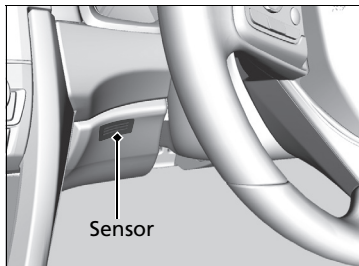
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate the audio system and other technology features.

Audio System*

About Your Audio System	274
USB Ports	275
HDMI™ Port	277
Audio Remote Controls	278

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen	281
Adjusting the Sound	302
Display Setup	303
Playing AM/FM Radio	305
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*	308

Playing an iPod	311
Playing a USB Flash Drive	314
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio	317
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™* ..	319
Smartphone Connection*	321
Wi-Fi Connection	325
Siri Eyes Free	327
Apple CarPlay*	328
Android Auto*	331

Audio Error Messages

General Information on the Audio System	337
--	-----

Customized Features

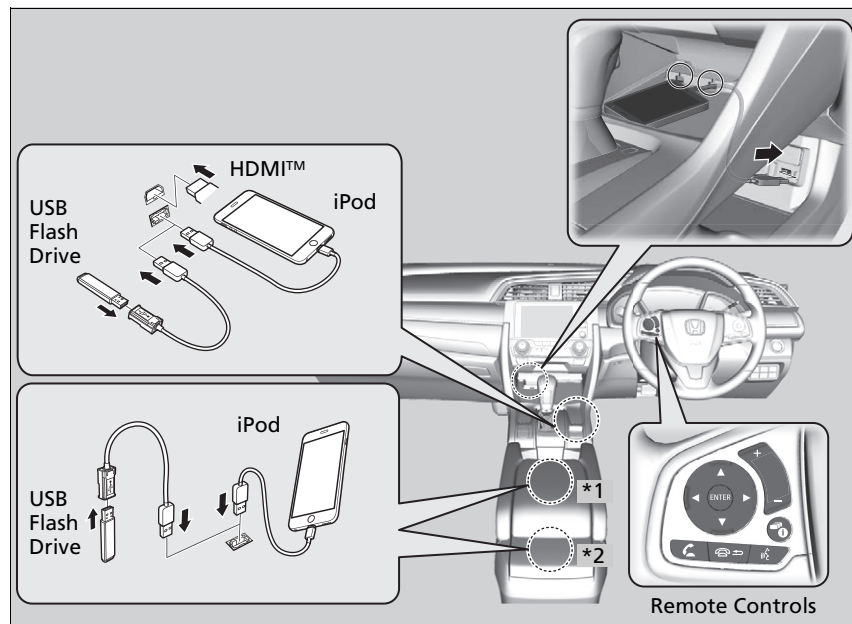
Hands-Free Telephone System

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and HDMI™ devices*.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.



About Your Audio System

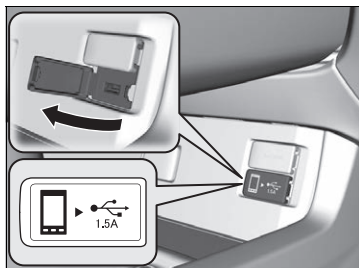
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

*1: Vietnamese models

*2: Except Vietnamese models

* Not available on all models

USB Ports



Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

- ▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with smartphone connection, Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*.
- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay*, and for Android Auto*, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

USB Ports

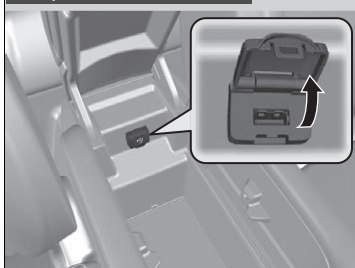
- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.5A of power. It does not output 1.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

Except Vietnamese models



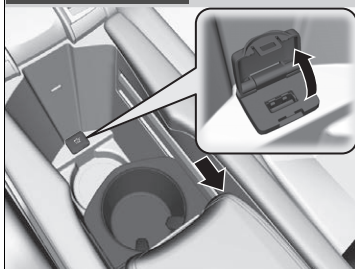
■ In the console compartment

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on the USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging device.

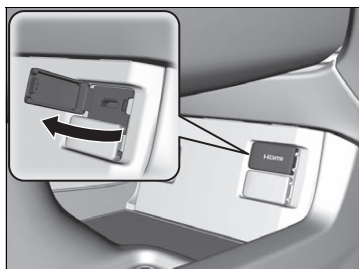
Vietnamese models

- Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

Vietnamese models



HDMI™ Port



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

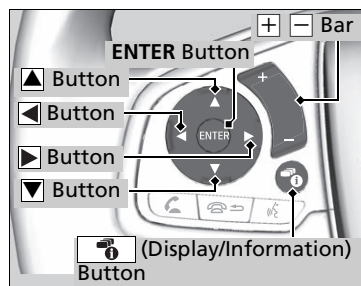
⌘ HDMI™ Port

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

FM→DAB*→AM→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*®
Audio→Apps→Audio Apps→AUX-HDMI™*

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio
 1. Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 1. Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
 3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of files in that folder.
 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a file, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to an iPod
 1. Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
 3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.

►► Audio Remote Controls



Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.



Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the (Display/information) button to switch the display.



► **Switching the Display** P. 281

4. Press  or  to select an item, then press **ENTER**.


► Press **ENTER** and press  or  repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.

- When listening to *Bluetooth®* Audio

1. Press **ENTER** to display the track list.

2. Press  or  to select a track, then press **ENTER**.


(Volume) Bar

Press : To increase the volume.


Press : To decrease the volume.


Buttons

- When listening to the radio

Press : To select the next preset radio station.

Press : To select the previous preset radio station.

Press and hold : To select the next strong station.
To select the next ensemble (DAB*).


Press and hold : To select the previous strong station.
To select the previous ensemble (DAB*).


- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth®* Audio

Press : To skip to the next song.



Press : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

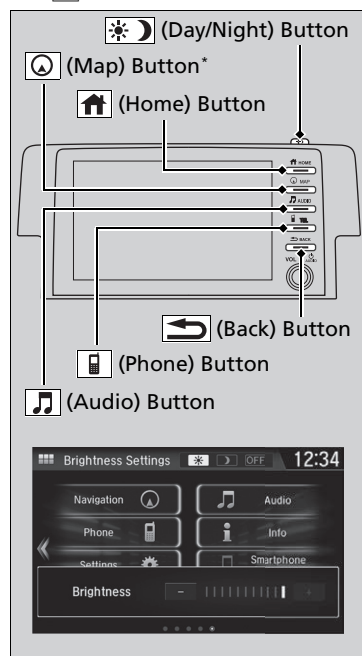
- When listening to a USB flash drive

Press and hold : To skip to the next folder.

Press and hold : To go back to the previous folder.

Audio System Basic Operation


To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *1.




 **(Home) button:** Press to go to the home screen.

➤ **Using the audio/information screen**


P. 282





 **(Map) button*:** Press to display the map screen.


➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

 **(Audio) button:** Press to display the audio screen.

 **(Phone) button:** Press to display the phone screen.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous screen.

 **(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press  once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

► Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


* Not available on all models

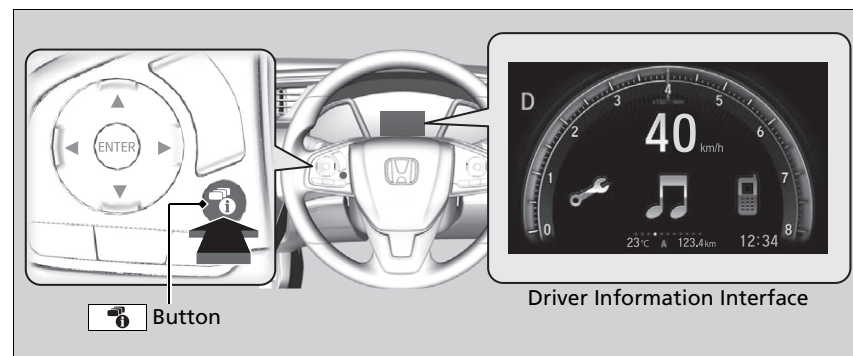
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper*. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display


Using the button

Press the  button to change the display.

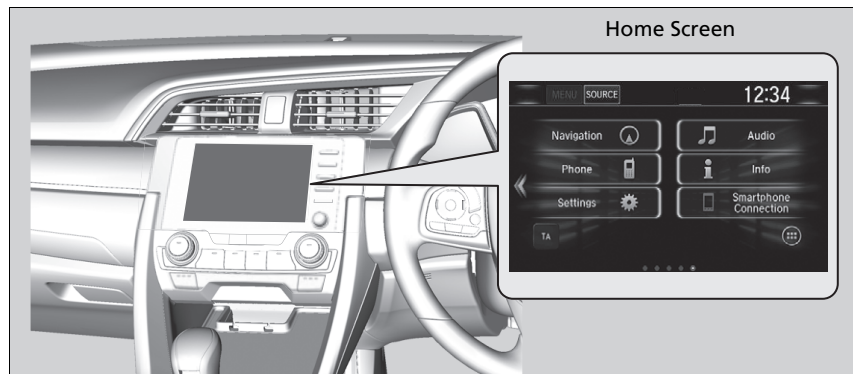



Using the button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

 **Customizing the Meter** P. 285

■ Using the audio/information screen



Press the  button to go to the home screen.
Select the following icons on the home screen.

■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 372

▶▶ Using the audio/information screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper*/Clock***, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper*/Clock*** and **System/Device Information**.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Clock/wallpaper*/Clock*: Displays the clock and wallpaper*.

System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

🔍 **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

🔍 **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

* Not available on all models

■ Smartphone Connection*

Connects with your smartphone*¹ and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system.

📱 **Apple CarPlay*** P. 328

📱 **Android Auto*** P. 331

📱 **Smartphone Connection*** P. 321

■ TA*

Turns on and off the traffic information.

■ App List

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen.

📱 **Home Screen** P. 291

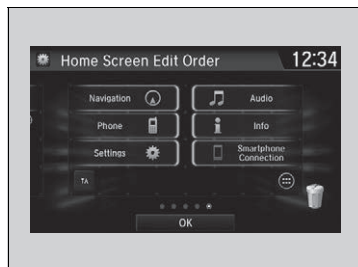
■ Instrument Panel


Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

* Not available on all models

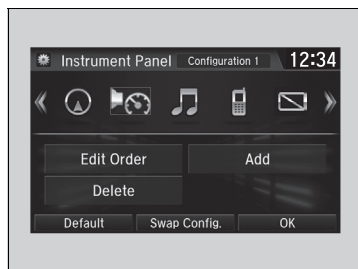
■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

■ Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.




1.  button
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

✕ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, press **Swap Config.**

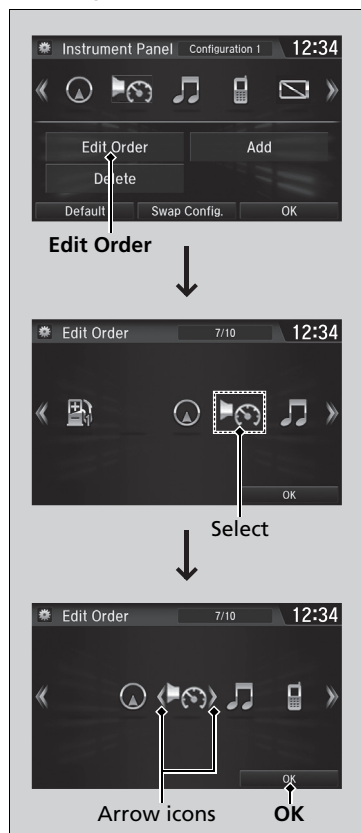
When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you press the  button during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:

1. Edit Order



2. Select the icon you want to move.

► You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

4. Select **OK**.

► The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

» Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

1. **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.

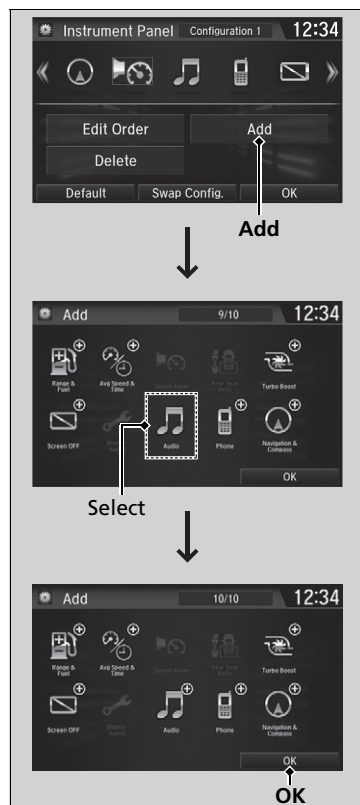
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

4. Select **OK**.

► The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:



1. Add

2. Select an icon you want to add.

- ▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

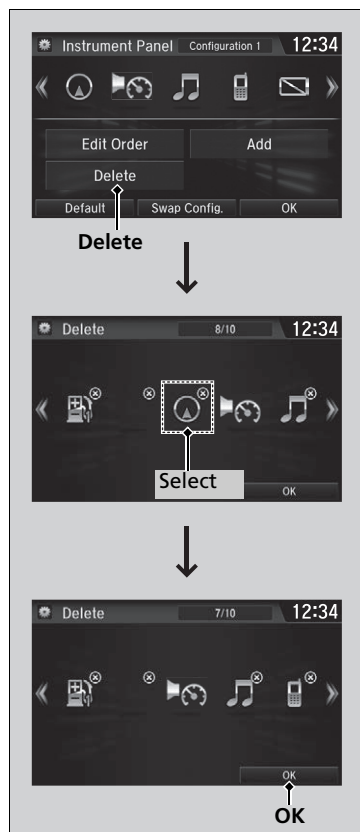
▶▶ Adding contents

Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Delete

2. Select an icon you want to delete.

- ▶ The icon with an **X** on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

▶▶ Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

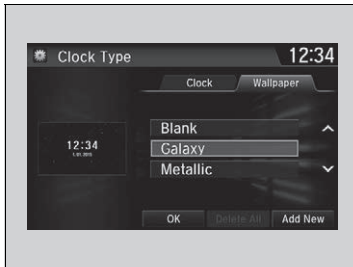
- ▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

■ Wallpaper Setup *

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.




1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
▶ **USB Ports** P. 275
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup *

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected.** message appears.


After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/wallpaper**.


■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
 - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

▶▶ Wallpaper Setup*

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



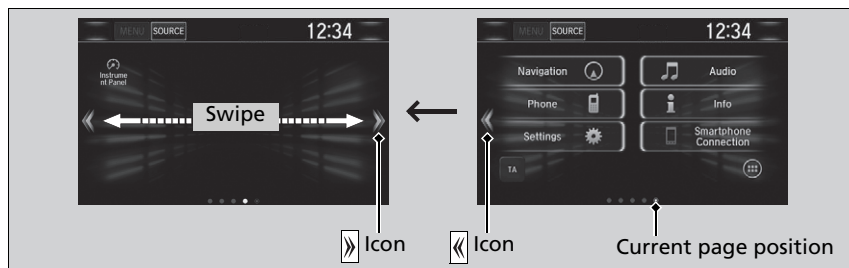
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or press the  button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

■ Home Screen

■ To change to a next screen



Selecting or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

▶▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Press the button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To use apps or widgets



1. Press the button.
2. Select **App List** .
 - ▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser***: Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Gallery***: Displays images.
- **Downloads**: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer**: Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.
- **Search***: Displays various retrieval screen.

▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶▶ Defaulting All the Settings P. 371

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶▶ Defaulting All the Settings P. 371

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

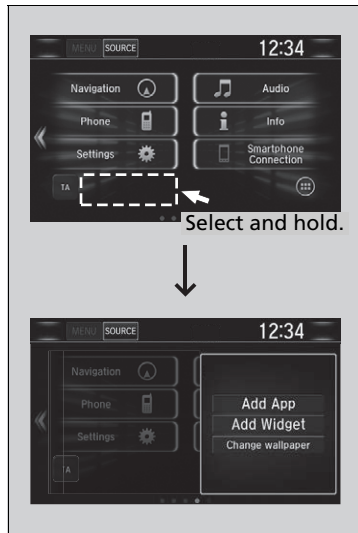
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.


1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **Apps**.
7. Select an app that you want to delete.
8. Select **Delete**.

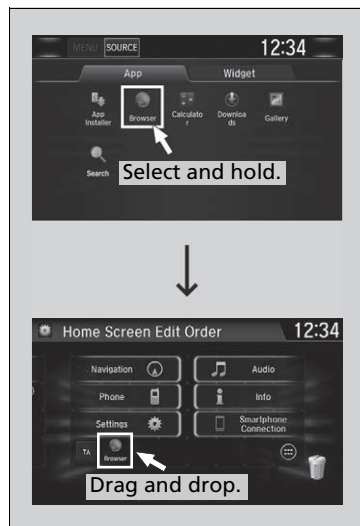
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



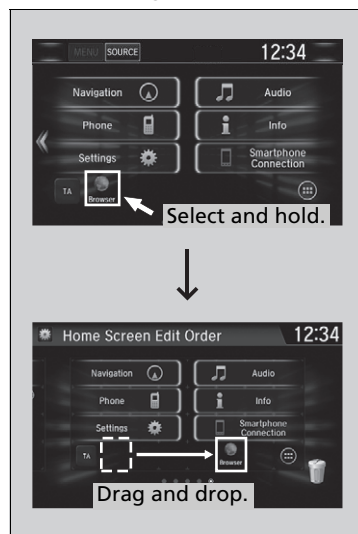
1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
 - ▶ The apps screen appears.



4. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
5. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
6. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

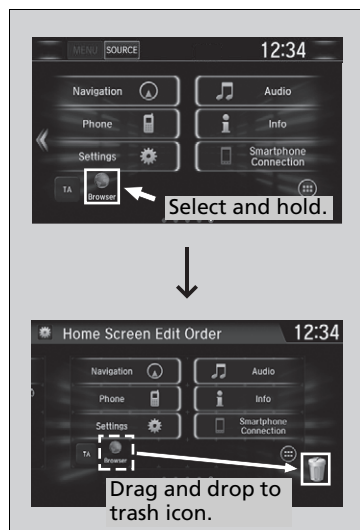
▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **Smartphone Connection***, **TA***, **App List** (⊞), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

* Not available on all models

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
 - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
 - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
 - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

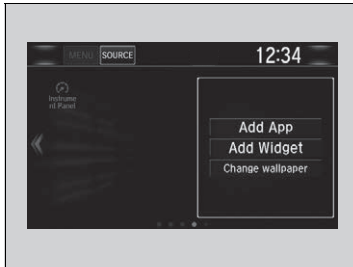
You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **Smartphone Connection***, **TA***, **App List** (☰), and **Instrument Panel** icons.

Deleting an app or widget from the home screen does not delete the app or widget itself.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

■ To change the home screen wallpaper

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.




1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Select **Change wallpaper**.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



3. Select an app for selecting wallpapers.
4. Select your desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Set wallpaper**.
▶ The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.

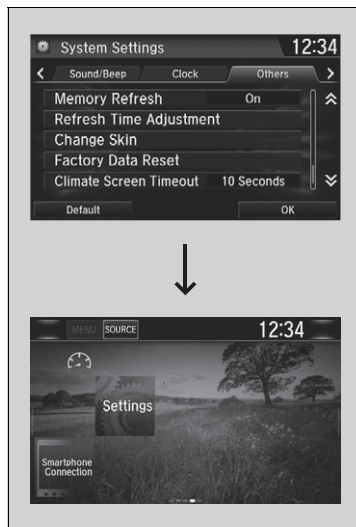
■ Status Area




1. Swipe down from the top of the screen.
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the  button or swipe up from the bottom bar to close the area.

■ Changing the Screen Interface *


You can change the screen interface design.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

▣ Changing the Screen Interface *

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

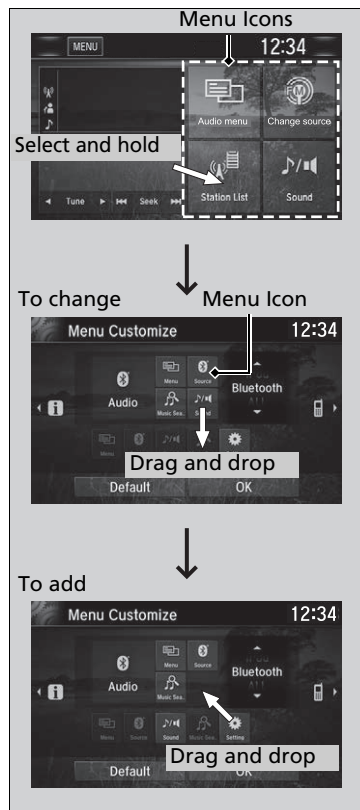
1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Menu Customize*

You can change menu icons on the right side of the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



1. Select and hold menu icon.

2. Select ◀ or ▶ icon, then **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** from **Menu Customize**.

3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

4. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon to above.

5. Select **OK**.

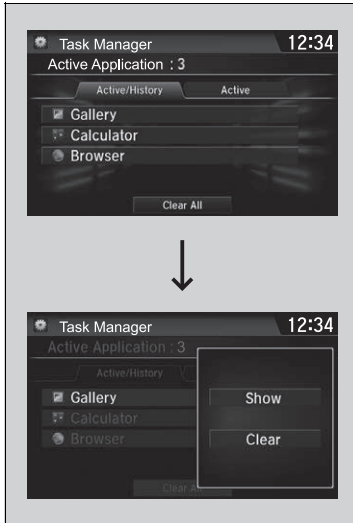
▶▶ Menu Customize*


You can also use the method below to change menu icon:

Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home** tab→**Menu Icon Position**

■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Press and hold the  button.
2. Select the **Active** tab.
 - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
 - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

» Closing Apps

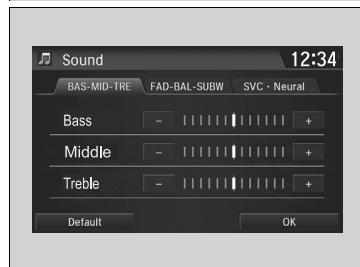
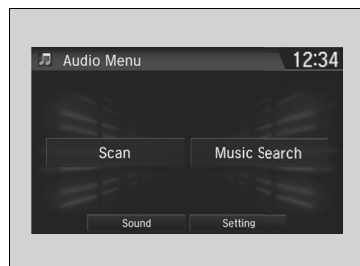
If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.


To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the Garmin* apps.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE:** Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL*/FAD-BAL-SUBW*:** Fader, Balance, Subwoofer*
- **SVC*/SVC-Neural*:** Speed Volume Compensation, DTS Neural Sound™*

▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

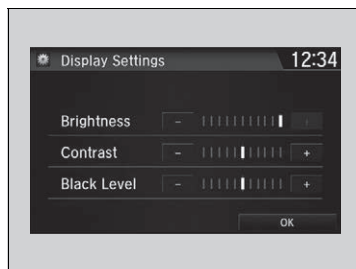
The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.


You can also turn on and off the DTS Neural Surround™ setting* by selecting **Neural** on the audio/information screen.

Display Setup

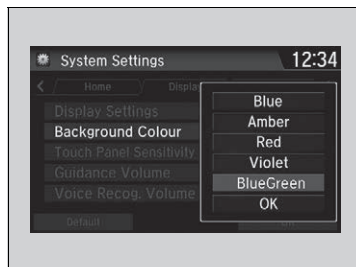
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.


■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

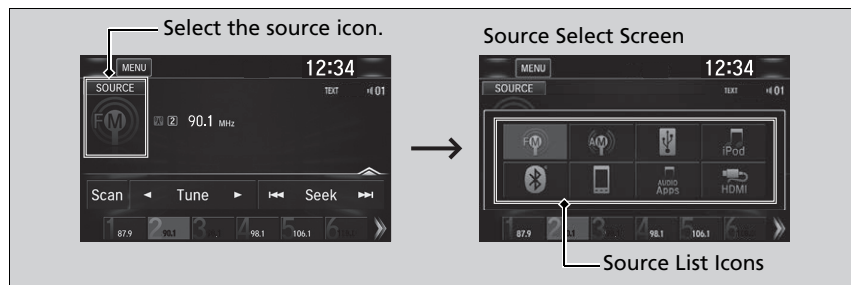
▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

▶▶ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

You cannot change the **Background Colour** if you change the screen interface design.

■ Selecting an Audio Source

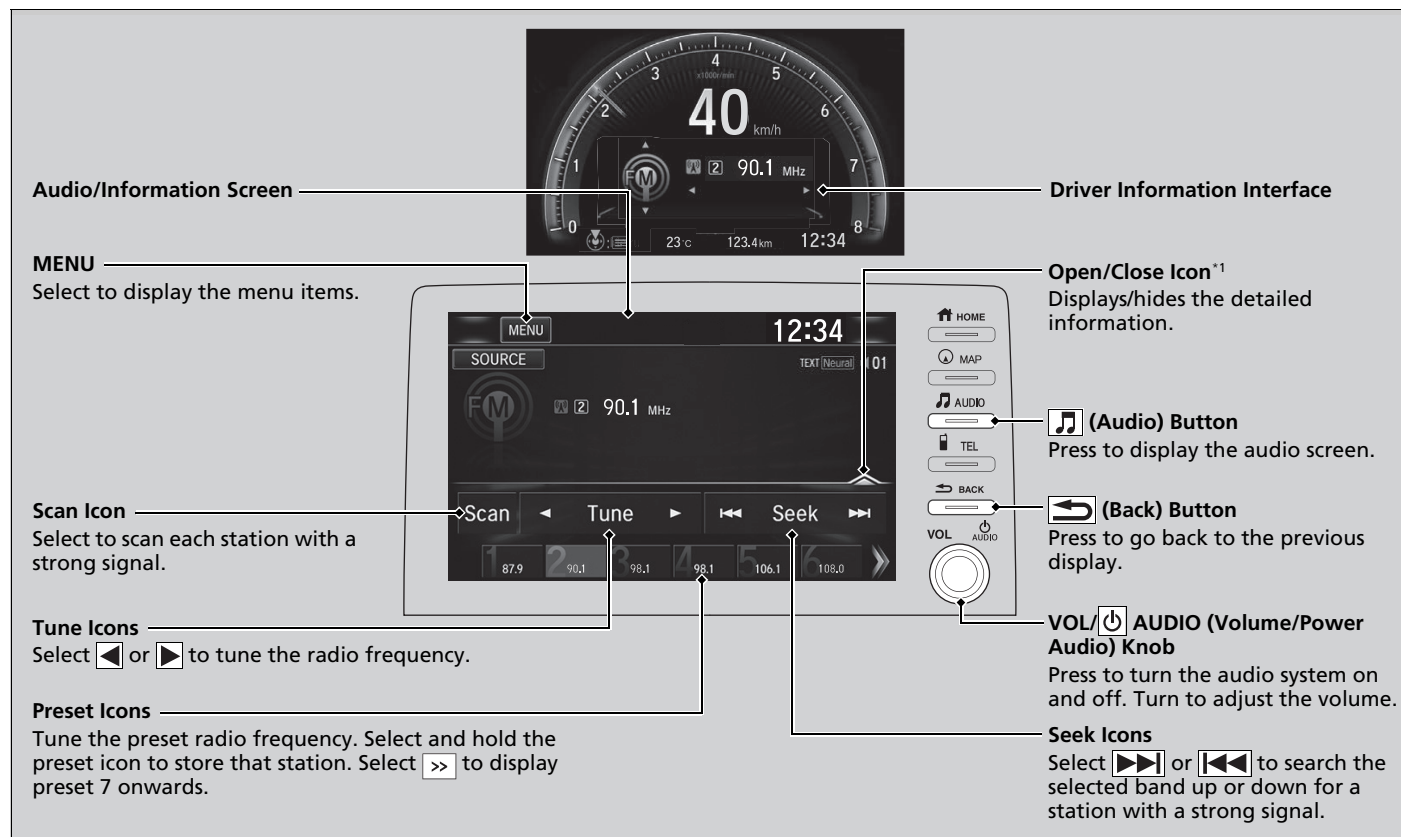


Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.



1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.


▶▶ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the  or  button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 278

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or press the  button.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

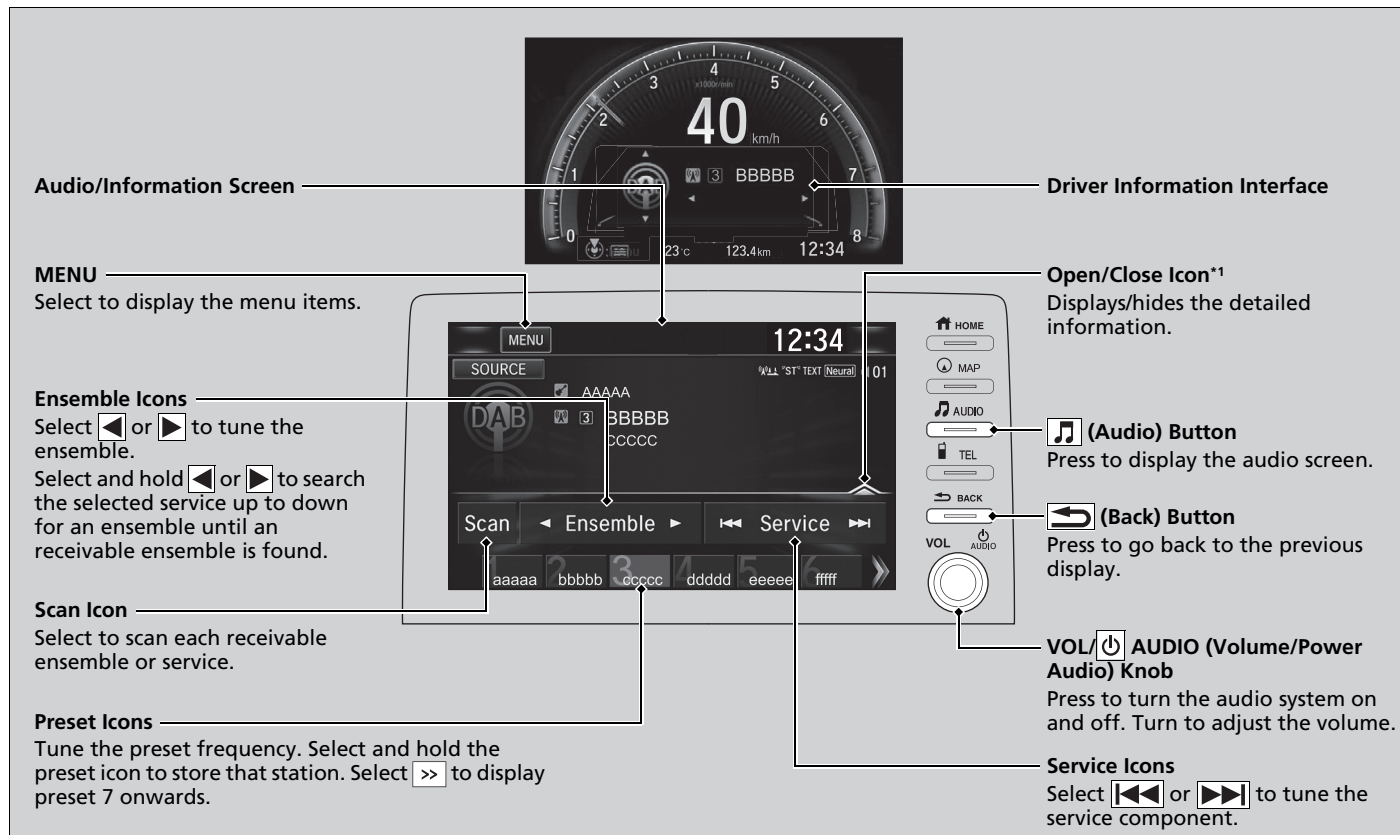
1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

■ Preset Memory

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

You can also store a preset service by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select the ensemble.



■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

▶▶ Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the  or  button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 278

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.

2. Select **Scan Ensemble** or **Scan All Service**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or press the  button.

■ Radio Text

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

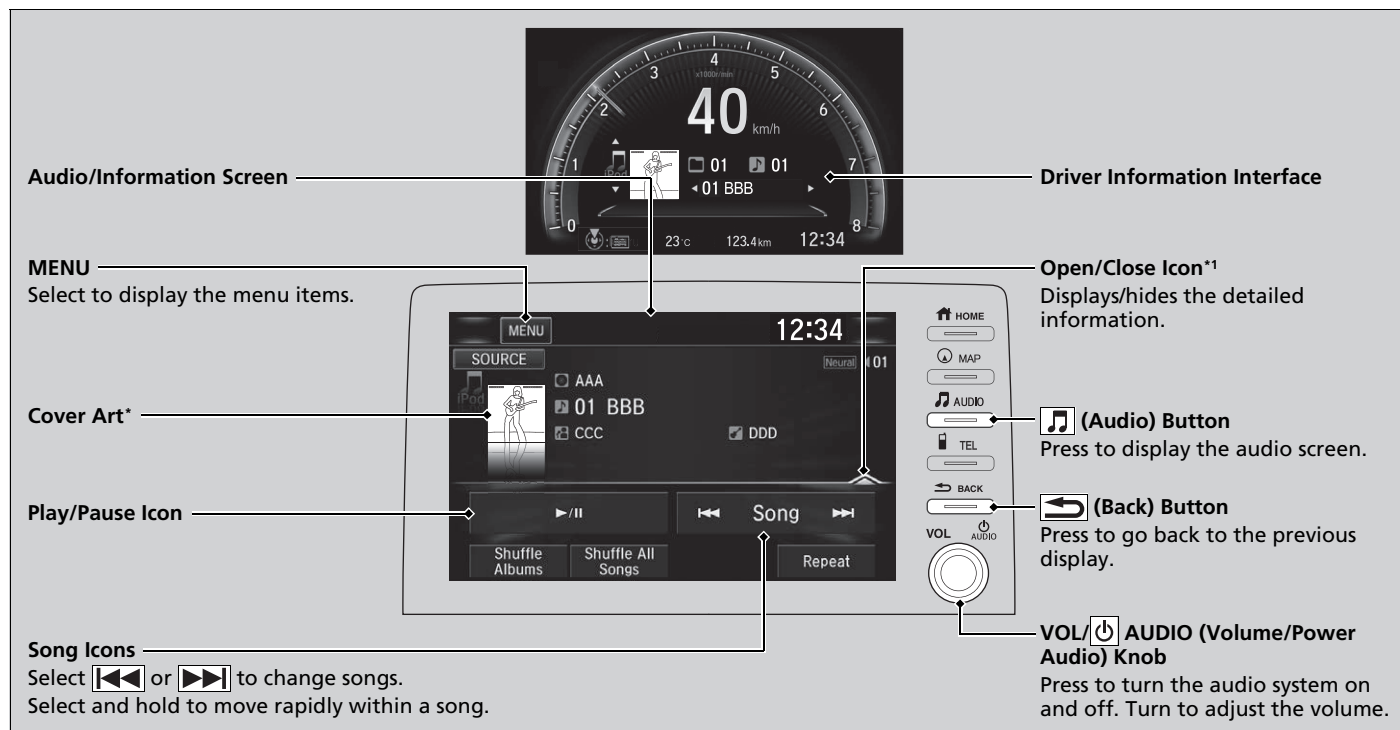
1. Select **MENU**.

2. Select **View Radio Text**.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

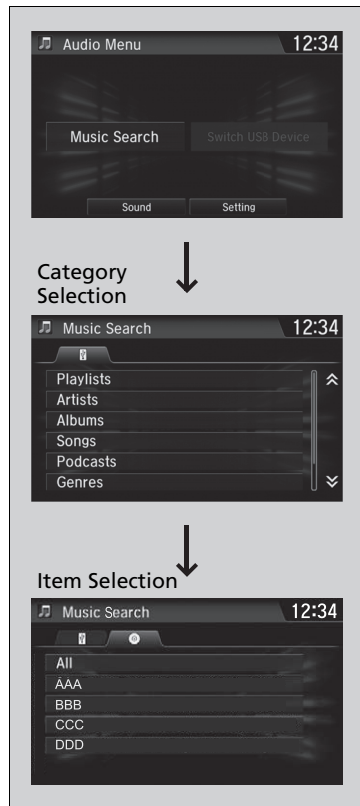
🔌 **USB Ports** P. 275



*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

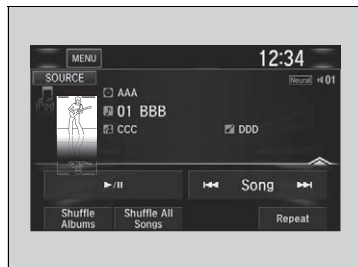
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 335

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.
Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums*1: Plays all available albums in a selected list in random order.

Shuffle All Songs/Shuffle: Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat: Repeats the song.

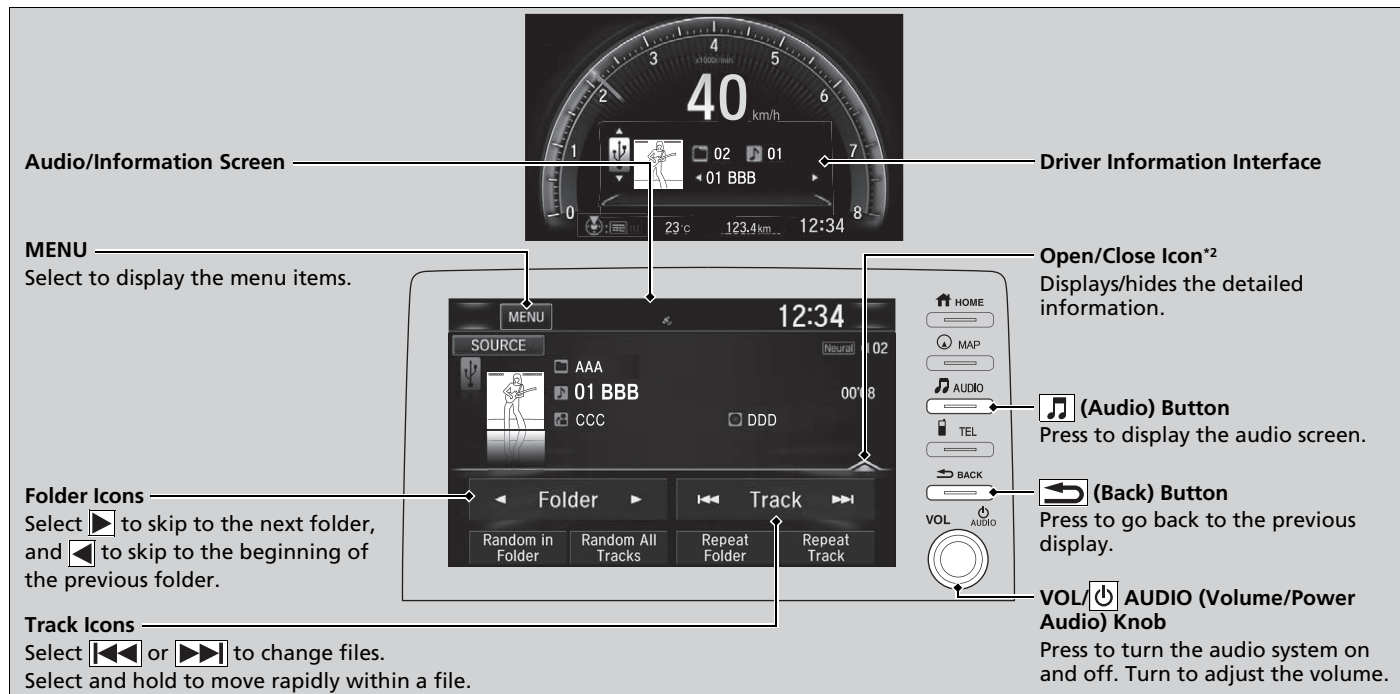
*1: This function is not available if your iPod is not supported.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and videos* files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*¹, WAV, or MP4* format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

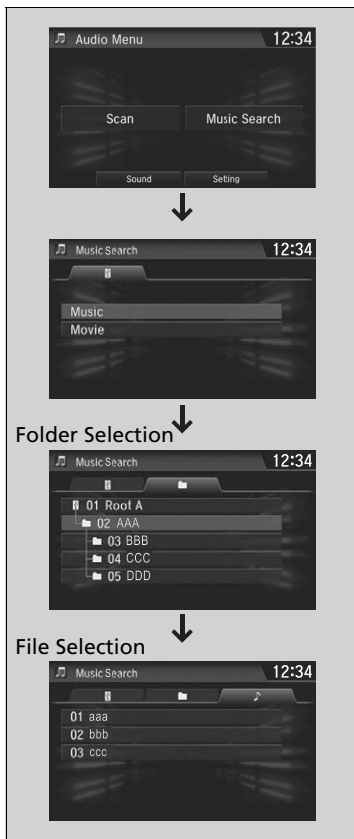
▶ **USB Ports** P. 275



*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

2. Select **Music** or **Movie***.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a file.

▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**
P. 337

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

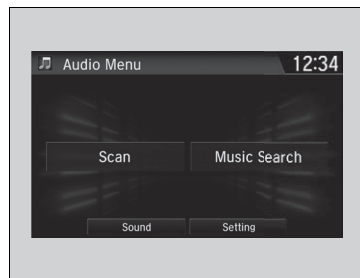
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 335

* Not available on all models

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

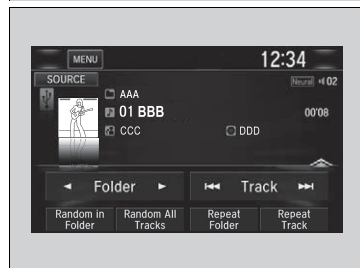


■ Scan


1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, press the  button or select **Cancel**.
To turn off random or repeat, select the mode again.

▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order.

Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file*:

Play/Pause: Plays or pauses the file.

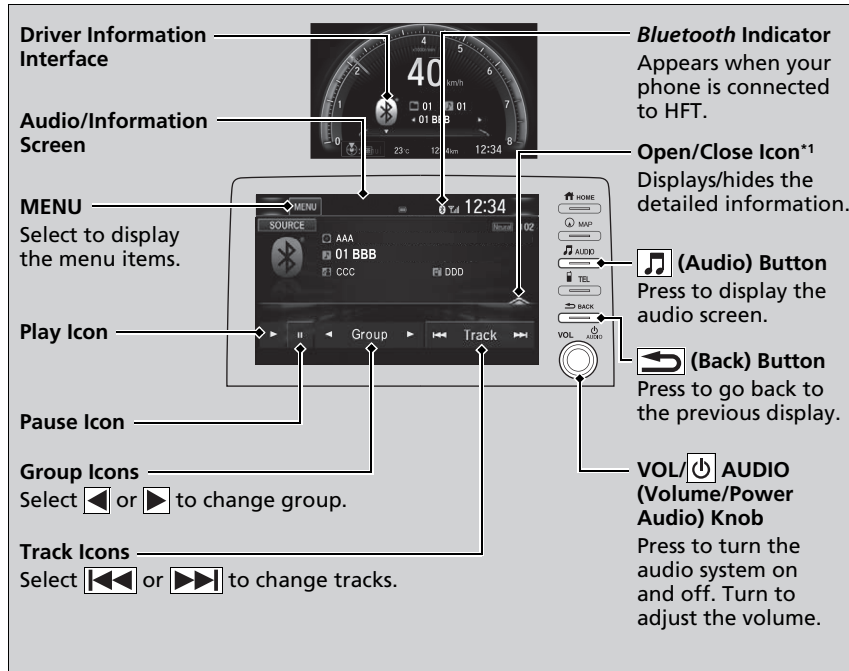
Stop: Stops the file.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 379



*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the **Priority Device Settings**.

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 343

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

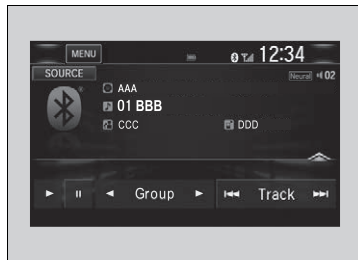
If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly. Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay* or Android Auto*, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** [🎵] from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 379

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 379

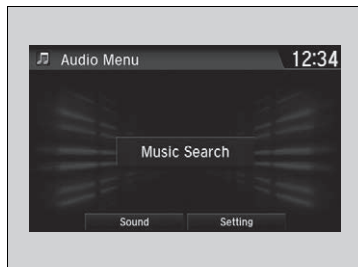
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

■ Searching for Music



1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Setting**.

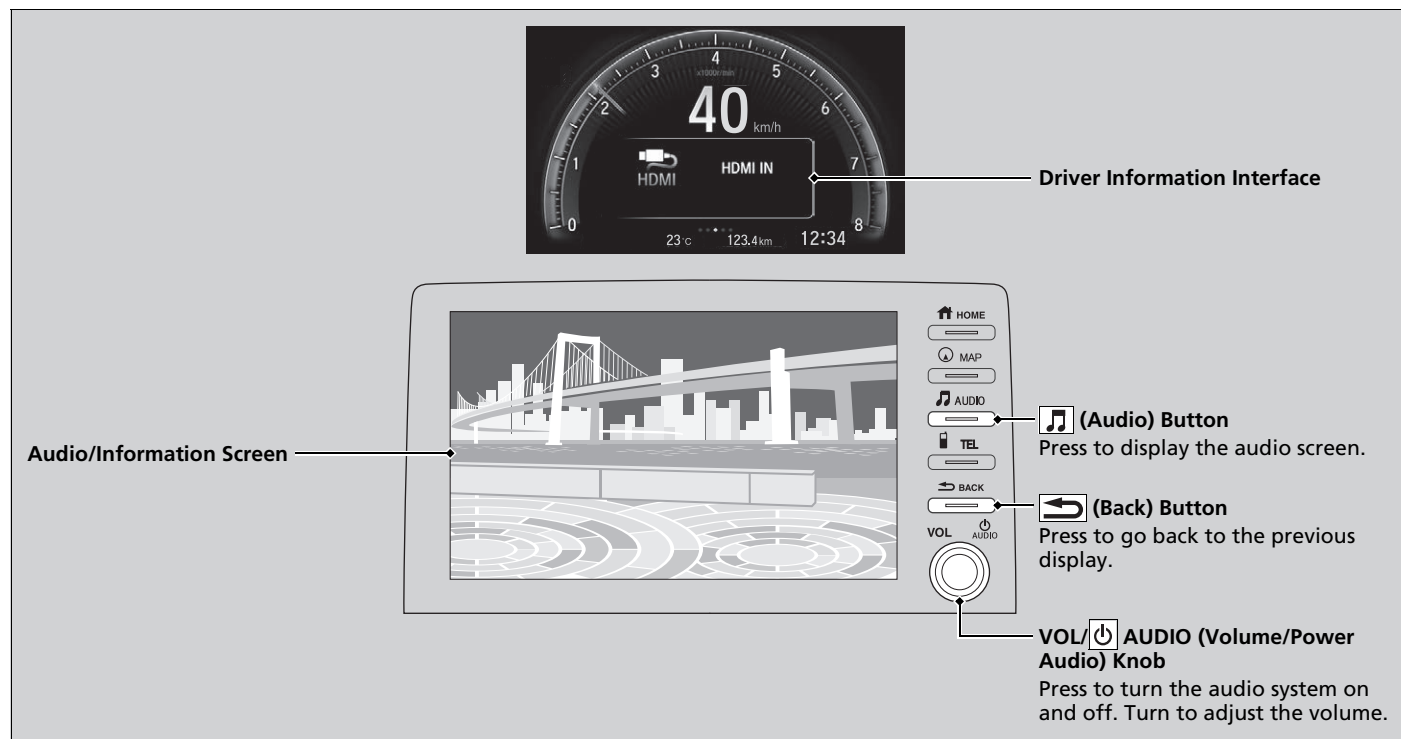
▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing a Video Using the HDMI™*

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.


📺 **HDMI™ Port** P. 277



* Not available on all models

■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **Video** tab.
5. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™*

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

Smartphone Connection*

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 379

📱 **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 323

📱 **Connecting Your Smartphone*** P. 324

Smartphone Connection*

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth®* connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

📱 **To change the currently paired phone**
P. 380

The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

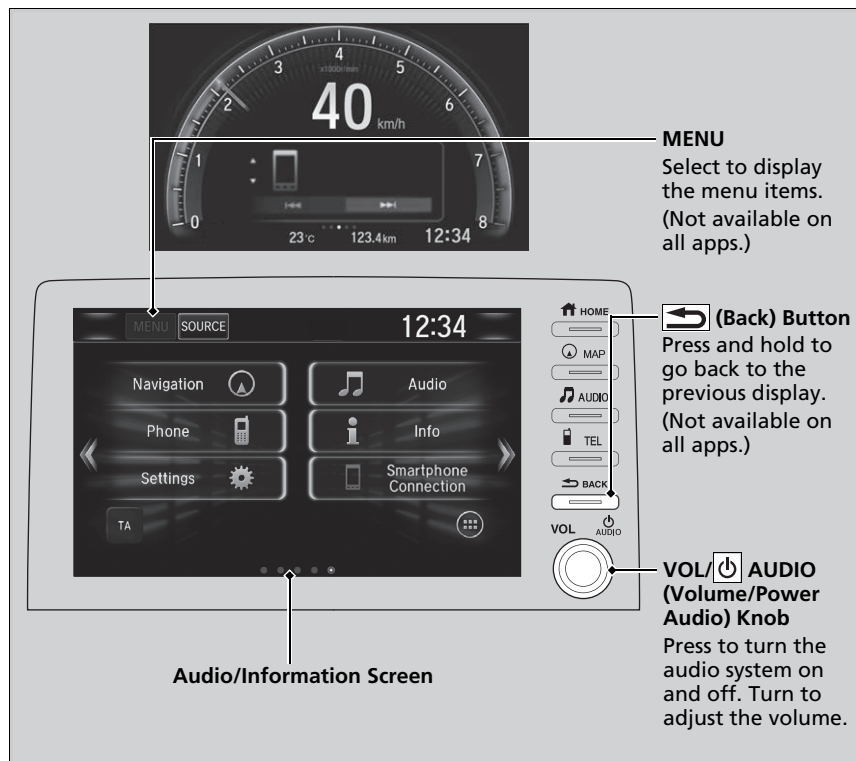
Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

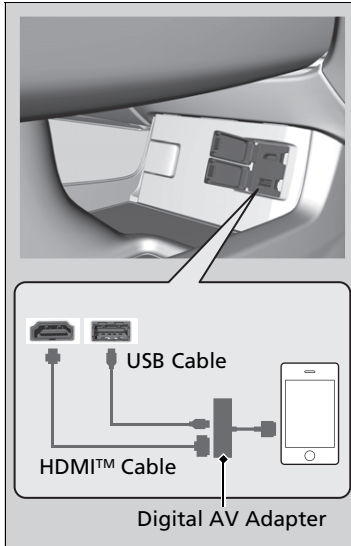
* Not available on all models


To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

📱 **Phone Setup** P. 379



■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 379
2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
▶ Wait until **Smartphone Connection** turns on.
4. Select **Smartphone Connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
▶ To go back to the previous screen, press the  button.

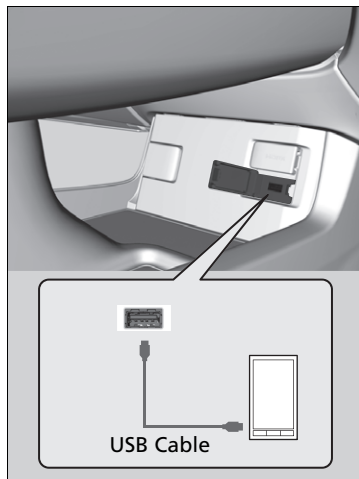
☒ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB port, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ purchasing information.

■ Connecting Your Smartphone*



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 379


2. Plug in your phone to the USB port.

▶ You may need to operate from the phone.

▶ Wait until **Smartphone Connection** turns on.

3. Select **Smartphone Connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.

4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.

▶ To go back to the previous screen, press the  button.

▶▶ Connecting Your Smartphone*

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

■ Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
 - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
 - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
7. Select **Add**.
 - ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **OK**.
 - ▶ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
8. Press the button to go back to the home screen.

▣ Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)


Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

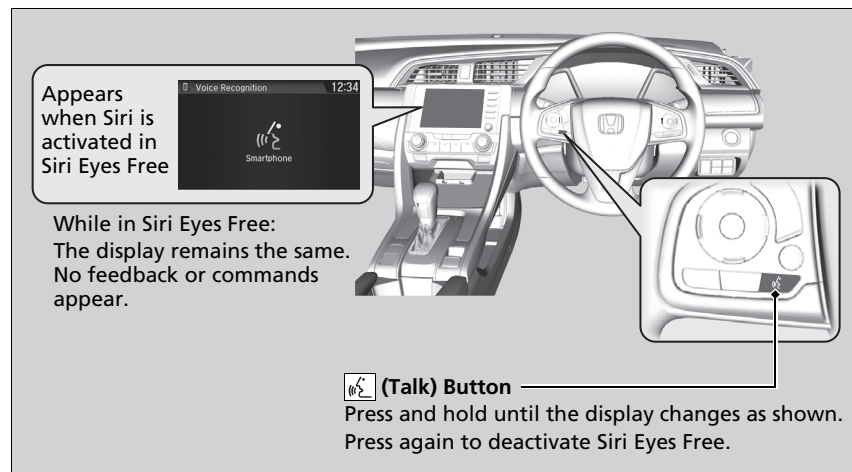
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 **Phone Setup** P. 379

■ Using Siri Eyes Free



▶▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

▶▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

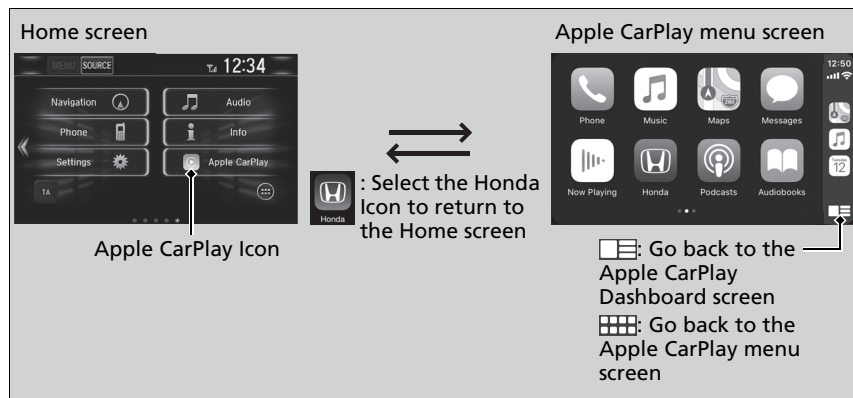
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay*

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 275

Apple CarPlay Menu



■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

Apple CarPlay*

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located in the centre console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

🔧 **USB Ports** P. 275

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

🔧 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 329

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

🔧 **Phone Setup** P. 379

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

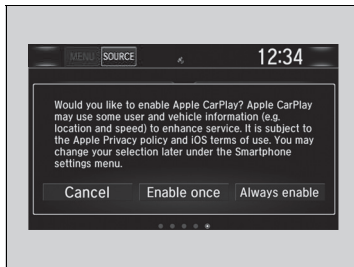
Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

* Not available on all models

Continued

▶ Apple CarPlay*

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

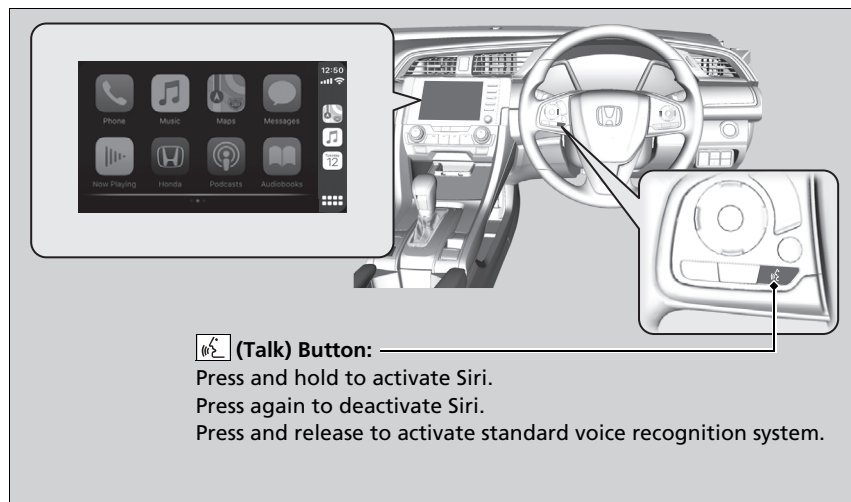
Press the  button → Select **Settings** → **Smartphone** → **Apple CarPlay**

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Siri.



►► Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit
www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto*

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

📶 **USB Ports** P. 275

📶 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 333

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

📶 Android Auto*

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

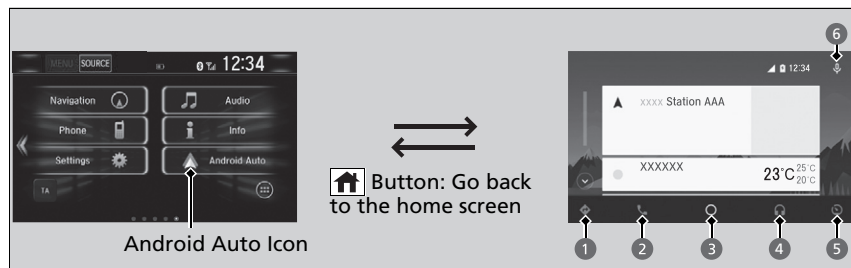
To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port in the centre console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

📶 **USB Ports** P. 275

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Android Auto is connected.

📶 **Phone Setup** P. 379

■ Android Auto Menu



① Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

② Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

③ Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

▶▶ Android Auto*

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

4 Music and audio

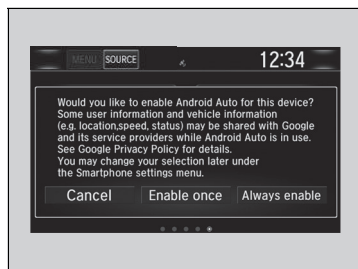
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto.
To switch between music apps, press this icon.

5 Go back to the Home Screen.**6 Voice**

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto

Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

▶▶ Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.


You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

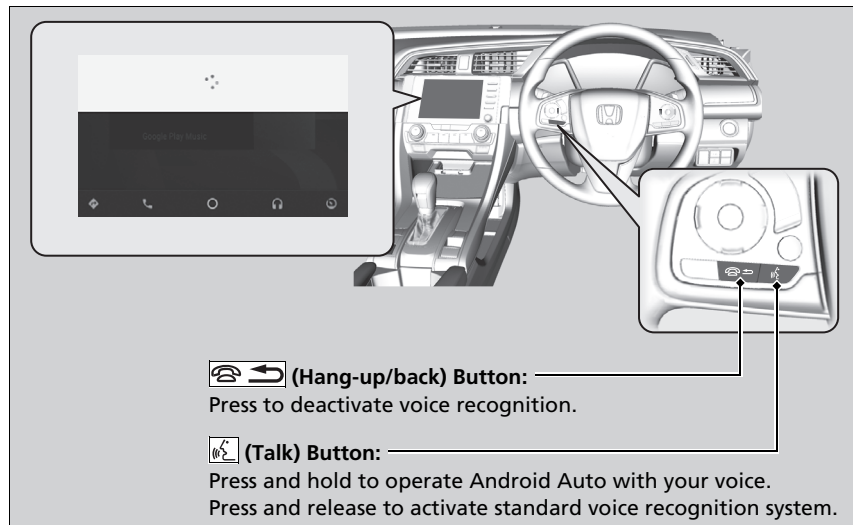
Press the  button → Select **Settings** → **Smartphone** → **Android Auto**

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.




▶▶ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
USB Error	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
Unsupported Version	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No Data	<div>iPod</div> Appears when the iPod is empty. <div>USB flash drive</div> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. <div>iPod and USB flash drive</div> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message ^{*1}	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?	App is not responding. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and restart it. If the error message continues, perform Factory Data Reset . 🔧 Defaulting All the Settings P. 371

*1: ****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c/iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/ iPhone 6 Plus

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

■ Recommended Devices *

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC	MP3
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	720 x 576 pixels	

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay*/Android Auto*

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENCE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.


■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licences information, follow these steps.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open-source licences**.

Licence Information*

■ DTS



For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

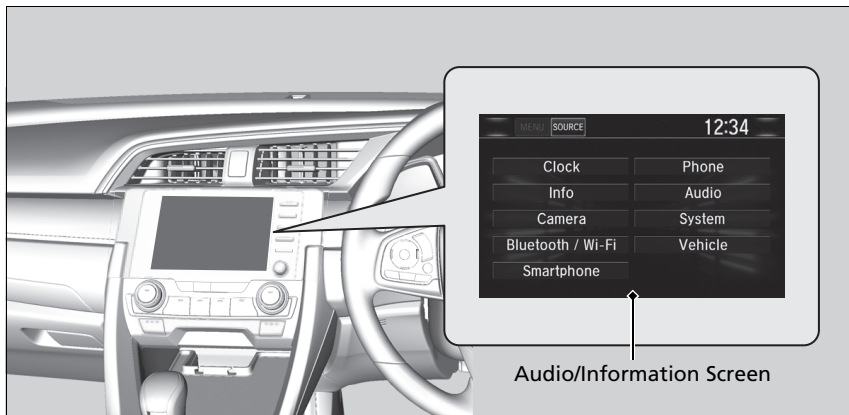


Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON ^{*1}, press the  button, and select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

» Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.

Continuously variable transmission models

- Shift to **P**.

Manual transmission models

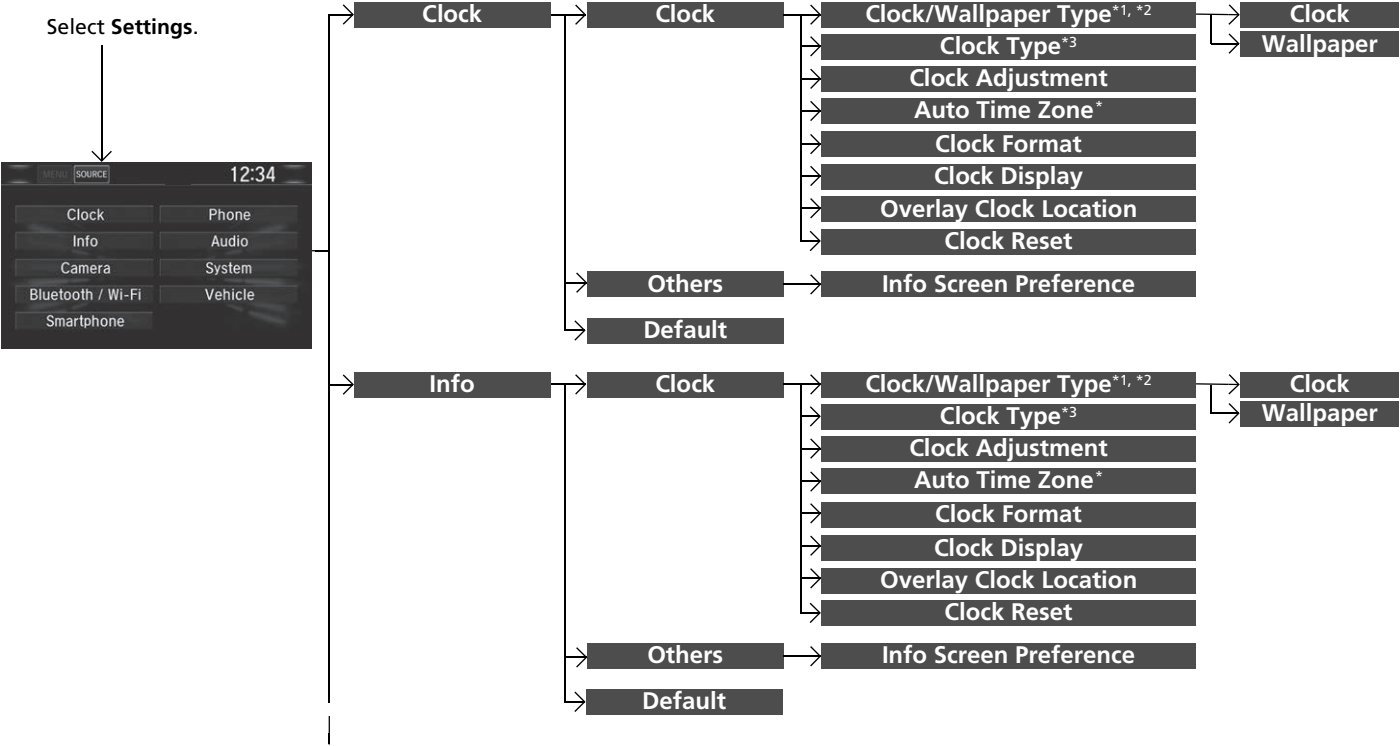
- Set the parking brake.

To customize features detail, refer to the following.

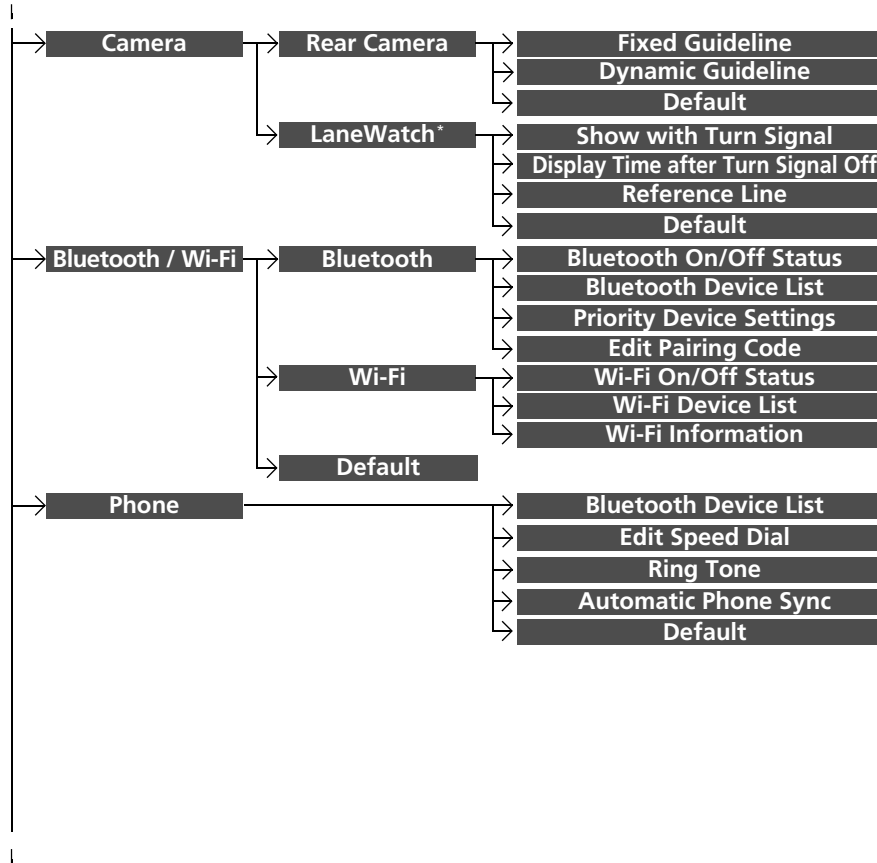
➤ **Customization flow** P. 344

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 351

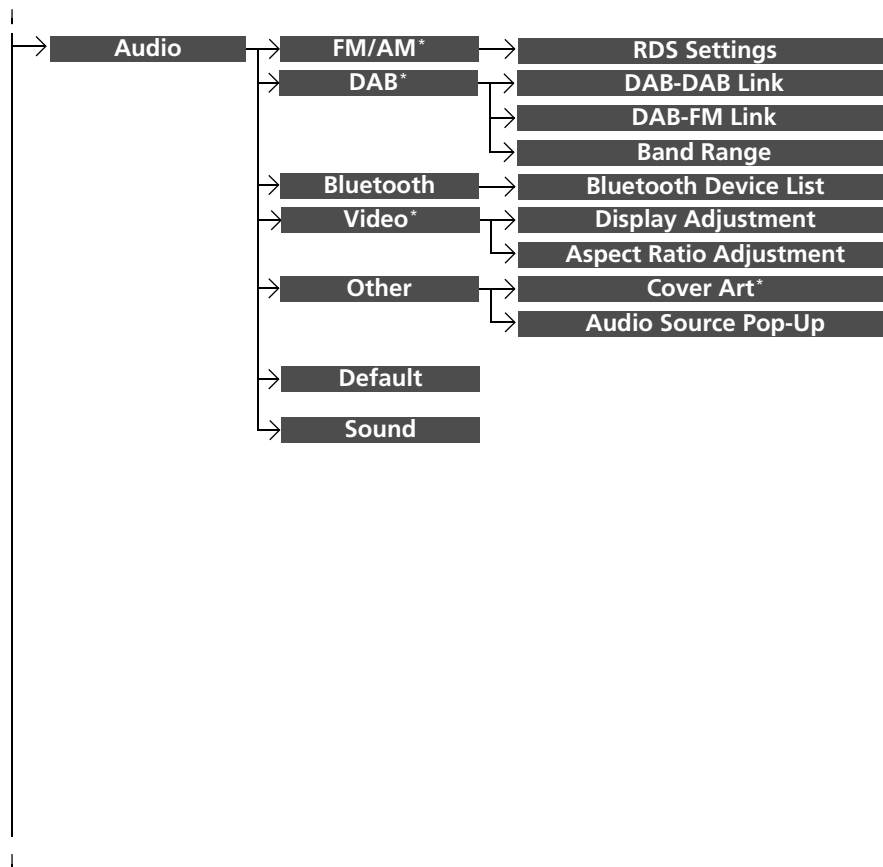
Customization flow

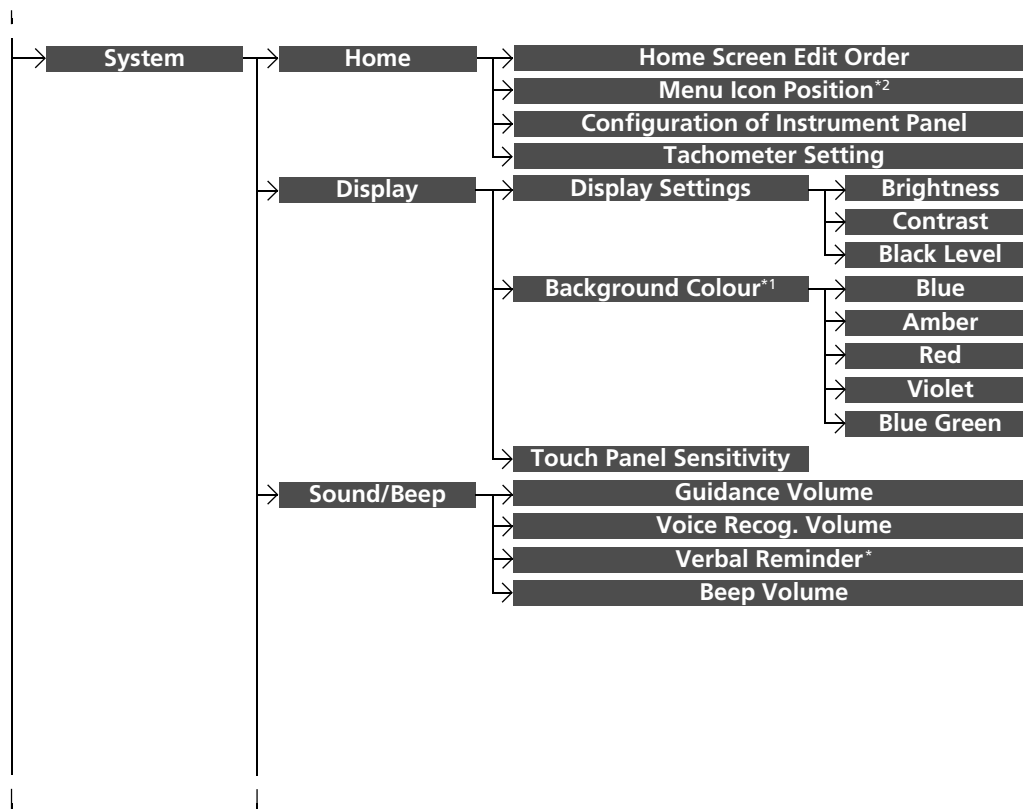


*1: Except Hong Kong and Macanese models
*2: **Clock Type** appears when you change the screen interface design.
*3: Hong Kong and Macanese models



* Not available on all models

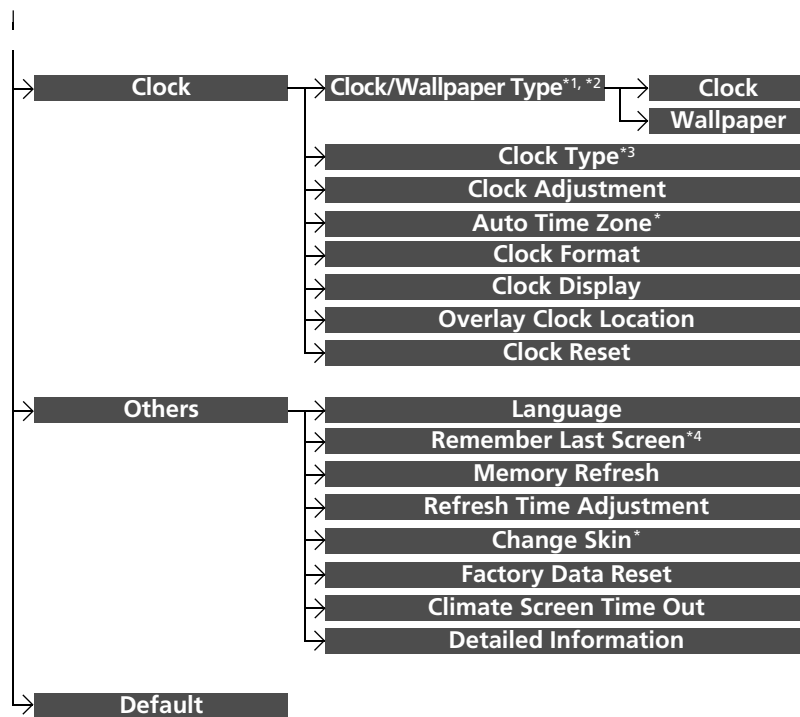




*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

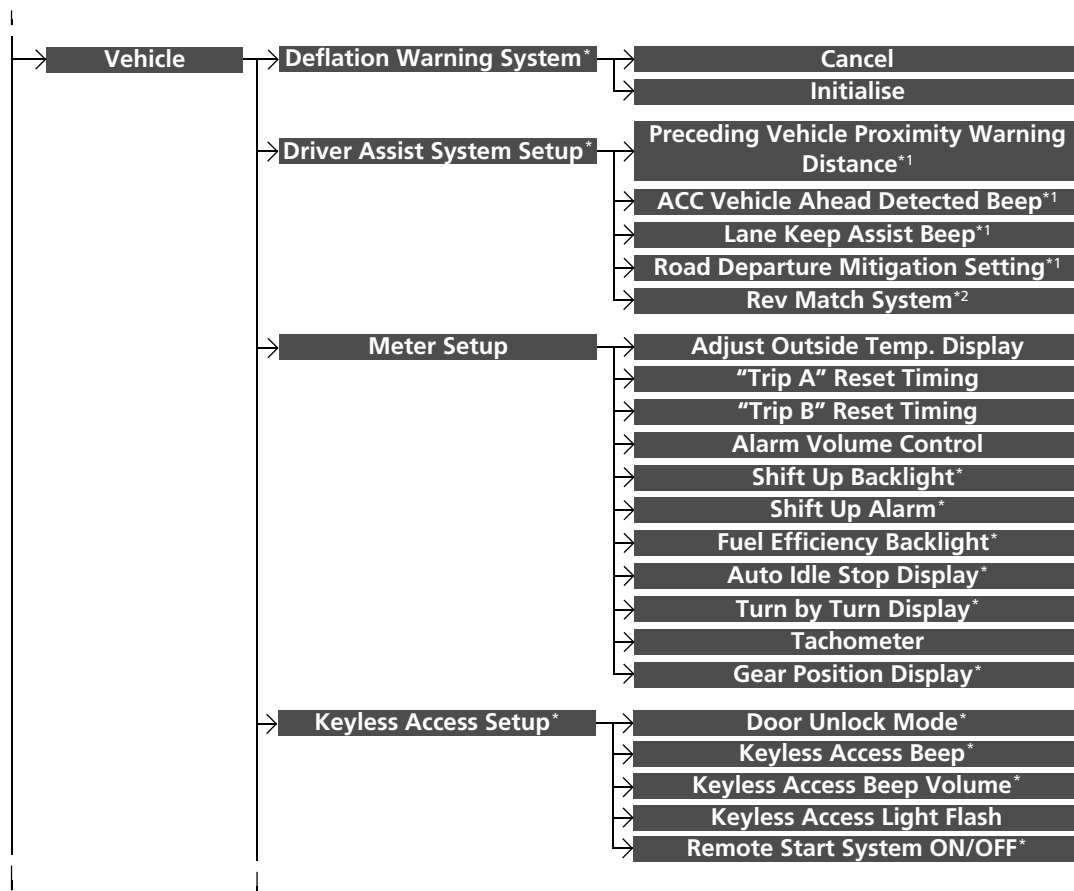


*1: Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

*2: **Clock Type** appears when you change the screen interface design.

*3: Hong Kong and Macanese models

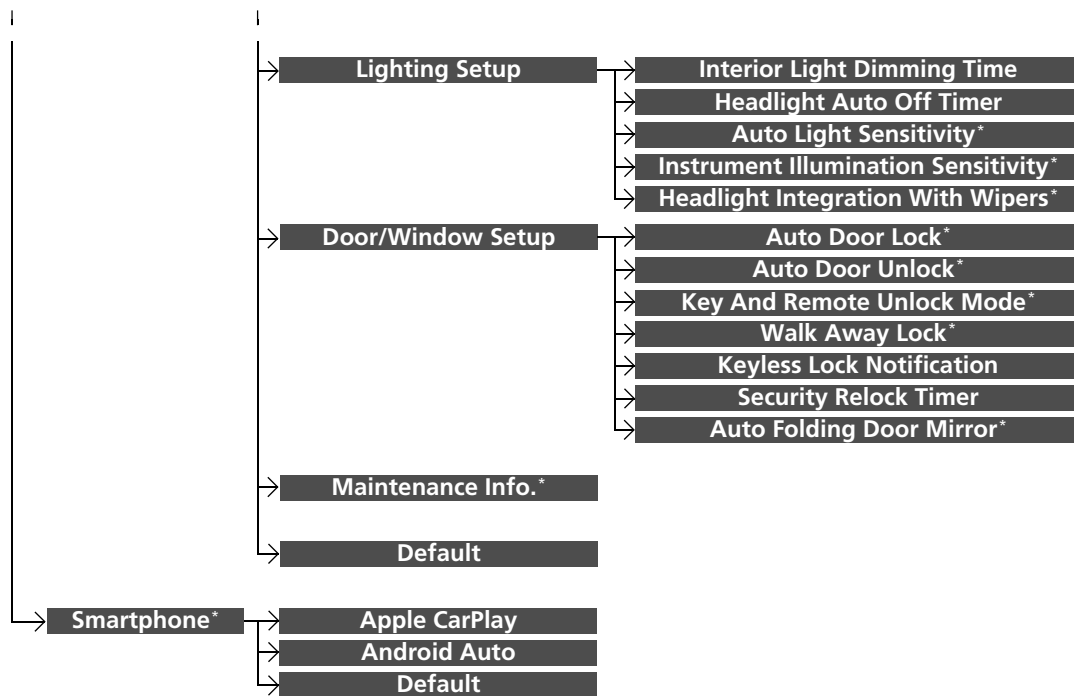
*4: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.



*1: Models with CMBS

*2: 2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock	Except Hong Kong and Macanese models	See Info on P. 352	Clock
	Clock/Wallpaper Type* ¹ /Clock type* ²		Wallpaper
	Hong Kong and Macanese models		
	Clock Type		
	Clock Adjustment		
	Auto Time Zone*		
	Clock Format		
	Clock Display		
	Overlay Clock Location		
	Clock Reset		

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Clock	Others	Info Screen Preference	See Info on P. 352		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Clock settings group as default.	Yes/No	
Info	Clock	Except Hong Kong and Macanese models	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital*¹/ Small Digital/Off
		Clock/Wallpaper Type*²/ Clock type*³	Wallpaper	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Changes the wallpaper type.• Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.• Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Blank/Galaxy*¹/ Metallic
		Hong Kong and Macanese models		Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital*¹/ Small Digital/Off
		Clock Type			
		Clock Adjustment	Adjusts Clock.	—	
	Auto Time Zone *	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	On*¹/Off		

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Info	Clock	Clock Format	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H. 12H^{*1}/24H
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on. On^{*1}/Off
		Overlay Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout. Right Upper^{*1}/Left Upper/Right Lower/Left Lower/Off
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default. Yes/No
	Others	Info Screen Preference	Selects the top menu when the Info is selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Info Top- A brief menu pops up. • Info Menu- A full menu pops up. • Off- A menu does not pop up. Info Top/Info Menu^{*1}/Off
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info settings group as default. Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. 📺 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 535	On^{*1}/Off
		Dynamic Guideline Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. 📺 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 535	On^{*1}/Off
		Default Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera setting group as default.	Yes/No
	LaneWatch [*]	Show with Turn Signal Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a left turn.	On^{*1}/Off
		Display Time after Turn Signal Off Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	0 seconds^{*1}/ 2 seconds
		Reference Line Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On^{*1}/Off
		Default Cancels/Resets all customized items in the LaneWatch group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	Bluetooth	Bluetooth On/Off Status	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On* ¹ /Off	
		Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 379	—	
		Priority Device Settings	Priority On/Off Status	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device which has been assigned priority.	On/Off* ¹
			Audio	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	—
			Phone	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	—
		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. 📱 To change the pairing code setting P. 380	Random/Fixed* ¹	

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi On/Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On/Off* ¹
	Wi-Fi Device List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
	Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth / Wi-Fi group as default.	Yes/No
Phone	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 379	—
	Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. 📞 Speed Dial P. 384	—
	Ring Tone	Selects a fixed ring tone or the one from the connected mobile phone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone* ¹
	Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On* ¹ /Off
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1: Default Setting


Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	FM/AM mode FM/AM*	TA Information	Turns on and off the traffic information.	On/Off* ¹
		AF	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.	On* ¹ /Off
		REG	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On* ¹ /Off
		News	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off* ¹
	DAB mode DAB*	DAB-DAB Link	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On* ¹ /Off
		DAB-FM Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On* ¹ /Off
		Band Range	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	BOTH* ¹ / BANDIII/ L-BAND
	Bluetooth® mode Bluetooth	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. 📱 Phone Setup P. 379	—

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
Audio	USB, HDMI™ or Apple CarPlay*, Android Auto* mode Video*	Display Adjustment	Brightness	See System on P. 359	
			Contrast		
			Black Level		
		Colour	Colour	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.	—
			Tint	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	—
		USB, HDMI™ mode Aspect Ratio Adjustment	Selects a display mode with a different aspect ratio: Original (only USB), Normal , Full or Zoom .	Original * ¹ (only USB)/ Normal / Full * ¹ / Zoom	
	Other	[Your selected media] Cover Art*	Turns the cover art display on and off.	On * ¹ / Off	
Audio Source Pop-Up		Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On / Off * ¹		

*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio settings group as default.	Yes/No
	Sound		Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound.  Adjusting the Sound P. 302	—
System	Home	Home Screen Edit Order	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—
		Menu Icon Position ^{*2}	Changes the position of the menu icons on the Audio , Phone , and Info screen.	—
		Configuration of Instrument Panel	Changes the Instrument Panel screen icon layout.	—
		Tachometer Setting	Turns on and off the tachometer display.	On ^{*1} /Off

*1:Default Setting

*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group		Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Display	Display Settings	Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/ information screen.	—
			Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/ information screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/ information screen.	—
		Background Colour*2		Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue/Amber/Red*3/ Violet/BlueGreen*3
		Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Low*1

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Sound/Beep	Guidance Volume	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	00~06*1~11
		Voice Recog. Volume	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	01~06*1~11
		Verbal Reminder*	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	On*1/Off
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2*1/3
	Clock	Except Hong Kong and Macanese models Clock/ Wallpaper Type*2/ Clock type*3	Clock	See Info on P. 352
		Hong Kong and Macanese models Clock Type	Wallpaper	

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
System	Clock	Clock Adjustment	See Info on P. 352	
		Auto Time Zone*		
		Clock Format		
		Clock Display		
		Overlay Clock Location		
		Clock Reset		
	Others	Language	Change the display language.	English (United Kingdom)*1: See other selectable languages on the screen.
		Remember Last Screen*3	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off*1
		Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the ignition switch is LOCK 0 *2.	On*1/Off
		Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for Memory Refresh .	—

*1: Default Setting
*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*3: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	Others	Change Skin*	Changes the screen interface design. Yes/No
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. ▶ Defaulting All the Settings P. 371 Yes/No
		Climate Screen Time Out	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the CLIMATE button. Never/5 seconds/10 seconds*¹/20 seconds
		Detailed Information	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information. —
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the System group as default. Yes/No	

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Deflation Warning System*	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel/Initialise
	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance*²	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance.	Far/Normal*¹/Near
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep*²	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range*/ACC with Low Speed Follow range*.	On/Off*¹
	Lane Keep Assist Beep*²	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	On/Off*¹
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting*²	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<div>Except Philippine models</div> Normal/Delayed*¹/Warning Only/Early <div>Philippine models</div> Normal*¹/Wide/Warning Only
	Rev Match System*³	Turns the Rev Match System feature on and off.	On*¹/Off

*1: Default Setting

*2: Models with CMBS

*3: 2.0 L engine models

Setup Group		Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*1
		"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*1
		Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid*1/Min
		Shift Up Backlight*	Changes whether shift up backlight blinks when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone. ▶ Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm* P. 165	On*1/Off

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Meter Setup	Shift Up Alarm*	Changes whether alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone. ☑ Shift Up Backlight*/Shift Up Alarm* P. 165	On* ¹ /Off
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight*	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On* ¹ /Off
		Auto Idle Stop Display*	Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop guidance screens comes on.	On* ¹ /Off
		Turn by Turn Display*	Used to select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	On* ¹ /Off
		Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer comes on the driver information interface.	On* ¹ /Off
		Gear Position Display*	Turns the gear position display feature on and off.	On* ¹ /Off

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Keyless Access Setup*	Door Unlock Mode*	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. Driver Door Only*¹/All Doors
		Keyless Access Beep*	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors. On*¹/Off
		Keyless Access Beep Volume*	Changes the keyless access beep volume. High*¹/Low
		Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors. On*¹/Off
		Remote Start System ON/OFF*	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. On*¹/Off

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Lighting Setup	Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec ^{*1} /15sec
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/ 15sec ^{*1} /0sec
		Auto Light Sensitivity*	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	Max/High/Mid ^{*1} / Low/Min
		Instrument Illumination Sensitivity*	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in AUTO .	Min/Low/Mid ^{*1} / High/Max
		Headlight Integration With Wipers*	Used to automatically come on the headlights when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch is in AUTO .	On ^{*1} /Off

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Door/ Window Setup	Auto Door Lock*	Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock. With Vehicle Speed*¹/Shift From P*²/Off
		Auto Door Unlock*	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. Shift to P*², *³/IGN Off*⁴/Off
		Key And Remote Unlock Mode*	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote. Driver Door Only*¹/All Doors
		Walk Away Lock*	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle. On/Off*¹
		Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.* On*¹/Off
		Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. 90sec/60sec/30sec*¹
		Auto Folding Door Mirror*	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors. Auto Fold With Keyless*¹/Manual Only

*1:Default Setting

*2:Continuously variable transmission models

*3:Default Setting for continuously variable transmission

*4:Default Setting for manual transmission

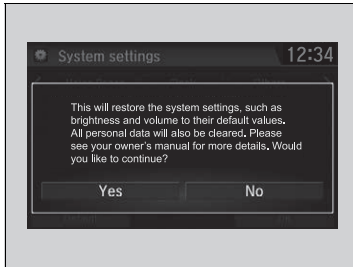
* Not available on all models


Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	Maintenance Info.*	Used to reset the oil monitor system information display when the maintenance service has been performed.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default.	Yes/No
Smartphone*	Apple CarPlay	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	Android Auto	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—
	Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Smartphone group as default.	Yes/No

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
 - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
 - After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

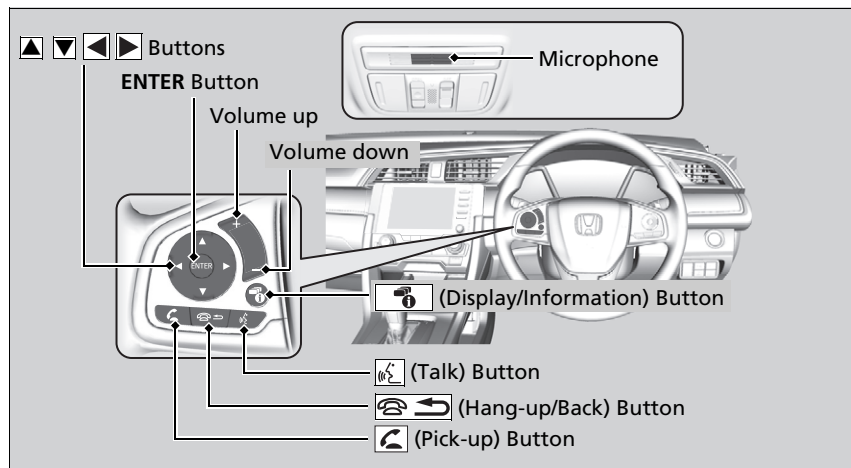
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



Hands-Free Telephone System


Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay*, HFT is unavailable.

How to customize P. 343


Voice control tips


- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.


Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.



Speed Dial P. 384

Up to five previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.


 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

  **buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

 **(Display/information) button:** Select  and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Press the  button to switch the display to the phone screen.
2. Select **MENU**.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

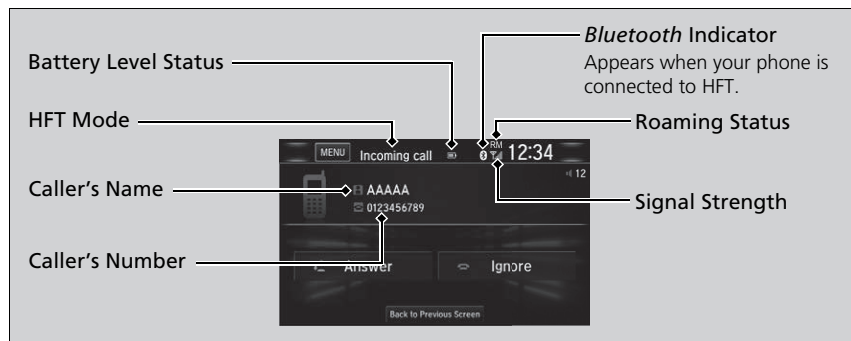
The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 384

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON *1 to use HFT.

■ Phone settings screen

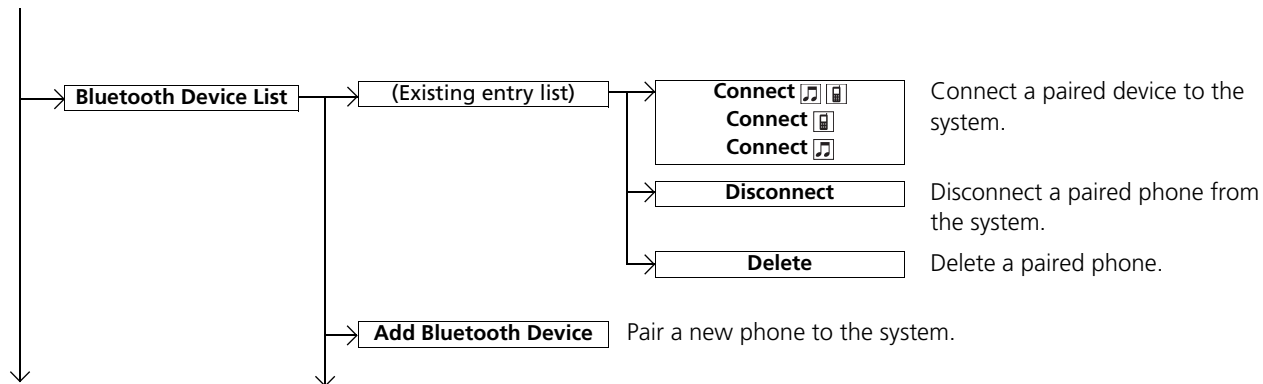


1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

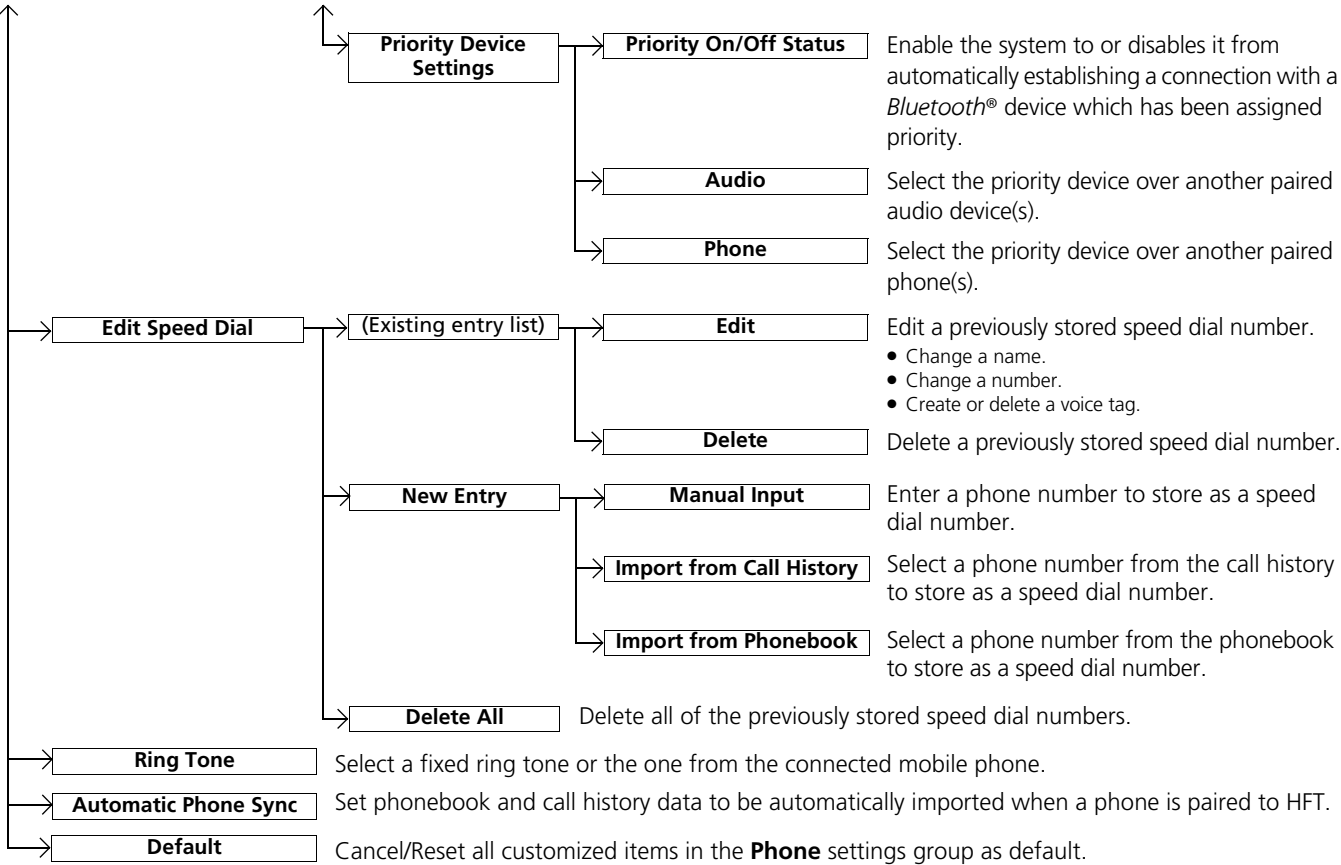
⌘ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.



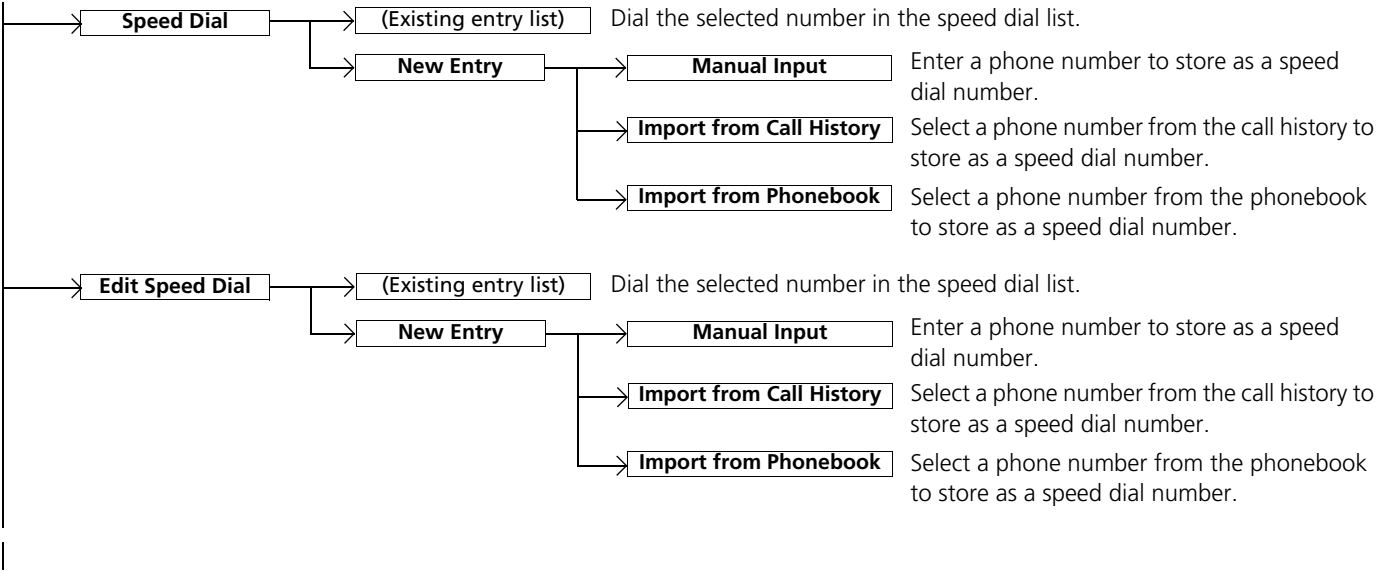
*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

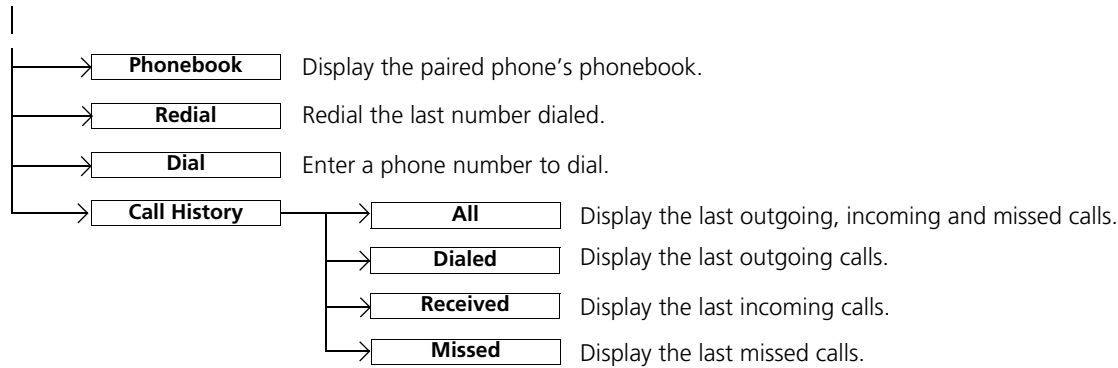


■ Phone Menu screen

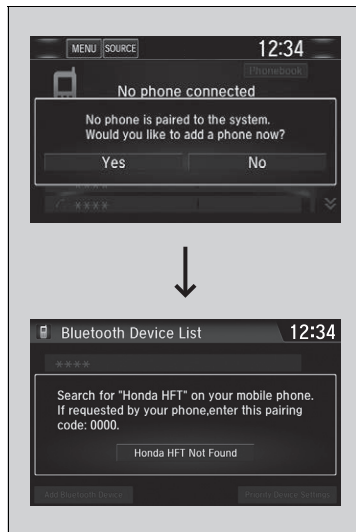


1. Press the button.
2. Select **MENU**.





Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
 - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Honda HFT Not Found, Continue**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
 - ▶ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** and then a device you want to prioritize.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay*, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

* Not available on all models

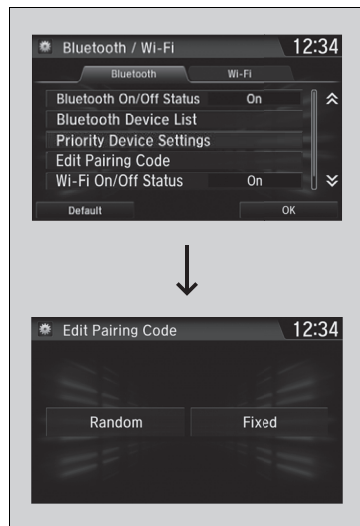


■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
 ► HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect** , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.



►► To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To change the *Bluetooth*® connection priority device setting, select **Priority Device Settings** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

►► To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

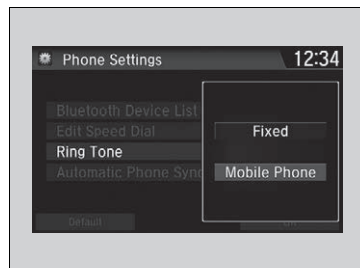


■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



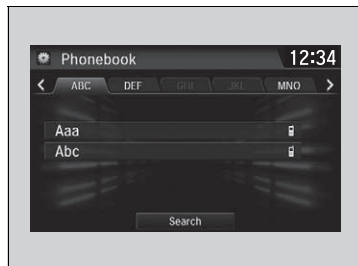
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 Phone settings screen P. 375
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

» Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Mobile Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

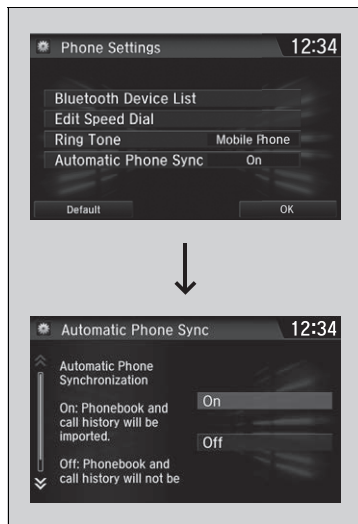


■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

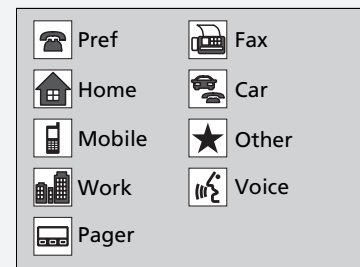
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.



3. Select **On** or **Off**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

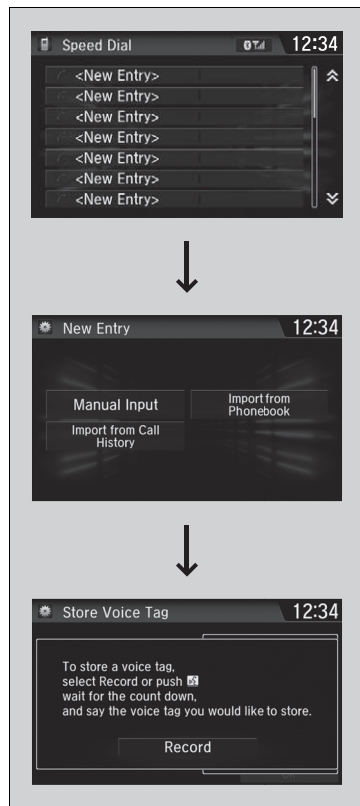


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

► **Phone Menu** screen P. 377

2. Select **Speed Dial**.

3. Select **New Entry**.

From **Import from Call History**:

► Select a number from the call history.

From **Manual Input**:

► Input the number manually.

From **Import from Phonebook**:

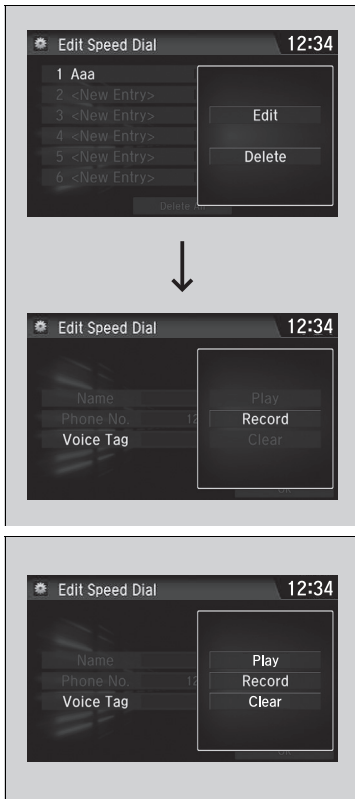
► Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.


5. Select **Record**, or use the [voice tag icon] button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

» Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [voice tag icon] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

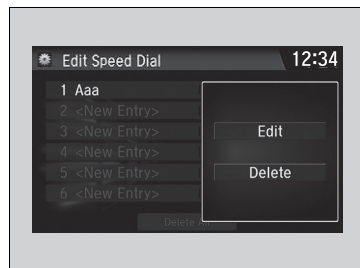
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

▶▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



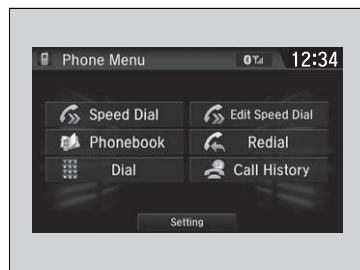
■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 ► **Phone settings screen** P. 375
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
 ► From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.


■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

☒ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.


While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay*, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay*.



■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 377
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering a name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 377
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using the imported phonebook

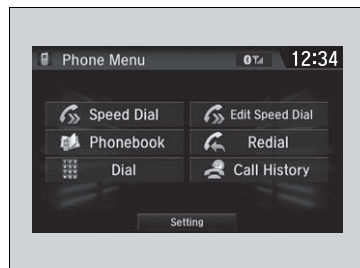
You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 384

▶▶ To make a call using a phone number

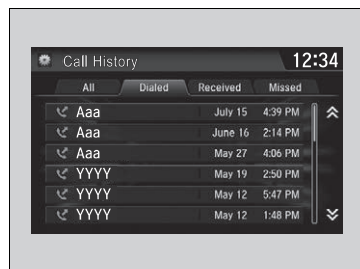
You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 384



■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 ► **Phone Menu** screen P. 377
2. Select **Redial**.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.



■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 ► **Phone Menu** screen P. 377
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.
4. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.




■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
 ► **Phone Menu** screen P. 377
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.
 ► Dialing starts automatically.


► To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

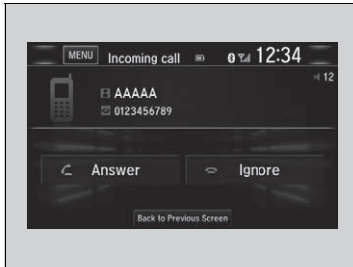
► To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.



► **Speed Dial** P. 384

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
 Press the  button and follow the prompts.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

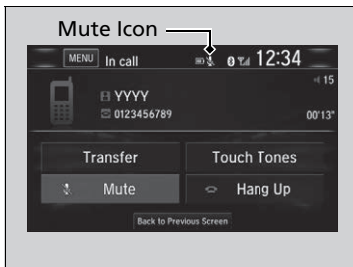
■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.




The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.


Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


» Receiving a Call



Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

» Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving	392
Towing a Trailer	396
When Driving	
Starting the Engine	401, 404
Precautions While Driving.....	409
Continuously Variable Transmission*	411
Shifting	412, 414, 418
ECON Mode*	422
Auto Idle Stop*	423
2.0 L engine models	
Drive Mode Switch.....	429
Cruise Control*.....	431, 437
Adjustable Speed Limiter*	441
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..	445

Agile Handling Assist	448
2.0 L engine models	
Limited Slip Differential (LSD)	449
LaneWatch*	456
Deflation Warning System.....	450, 453
Oceanian 1.5 L engine models with LED headlights	
Malaysian models	
Adjusting Headlight Distribution	458
Honda Sensing*	459
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	462
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	473

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	488
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	502
Road Departure Mitigation System...	510
Front Sensor Camera	516
Radar Sensor	518
Braking	519
Parking Your Vehicle	529
Multi-View Rear Camera	535
Refueling	537
Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions	543
1.5 L and 2.0 L engine models	
Turbo Engine Vehicle	544

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.

🔍 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 597
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
 - ✚ **Load Limit** P. 395
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the hatch.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint*, too.
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 239
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 242
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 236
 - ✚ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 235

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
 - 📌 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 50
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - 📌 **Indicators** P. 104

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 684

Oceanian models without centre exhaust silencer

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 684

Load Limit

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

Except Oceanian models

Oceanian models with centre exhaust silencer

2.0 L engine models

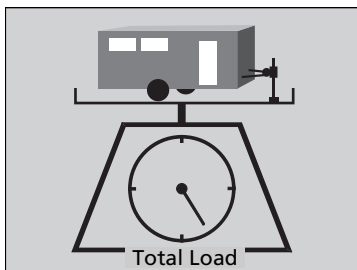
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Oceanian models without centre exhaust silencer

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

» Towing Load Limits

⚠ WARNING

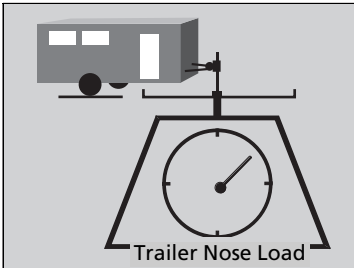
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution. Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

Break-in Period.

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.



■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 75 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 750 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load towards the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

▣ Towing Load Limits

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

▣ **Specifications** P. 684

■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment. Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer*

■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
▣ Towing Load Limits P. 396
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **[D]** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

▣ Driving Safely with a Trailer*

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h.

Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

▣ Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

* Not available on all models

■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the **H** mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Models with paddle shifter

- Shift to the **S** position and use the paddle shifter to shift down when driving down hills.
This helps to increase engine braking efficiently and prevent the brake system from overheating.

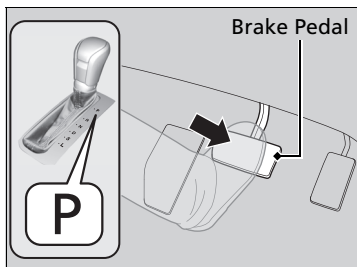
►► Driving in Hilly Terrain

Models with paddle shifter

If you use the paddle shifters when driving uphill and downhill, select 3rd, 2nd, or 1st gear, depending on the vehicle speed and road conditions. Do not use 4th and 5th gears.

Models without keyless access system

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Starting the Engine

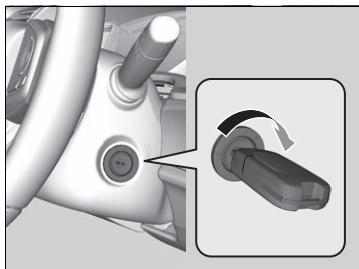
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Continued



3. Turn the ignition switch to START ||| without depressing the accelerator pedal.

► Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START ||| for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

► **Immobilizer System** P. 204

■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
 2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
- **Parking Brake** P. 519

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to **[D]**, **[S]** or **[L]*** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

▶▶ Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

▶▶ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

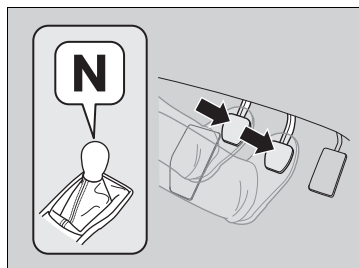
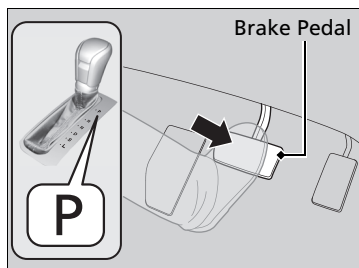
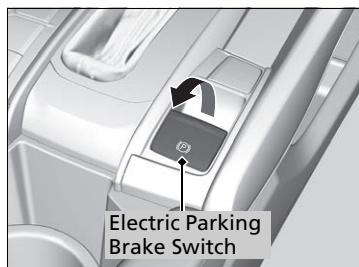
Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

* Not available on all models

Models with keyless access system

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
 - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

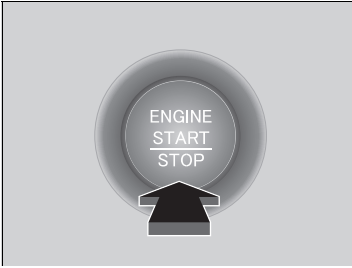
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**
P. 646

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the shift lever is in **N**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **N**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

►► Starting the Engine

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

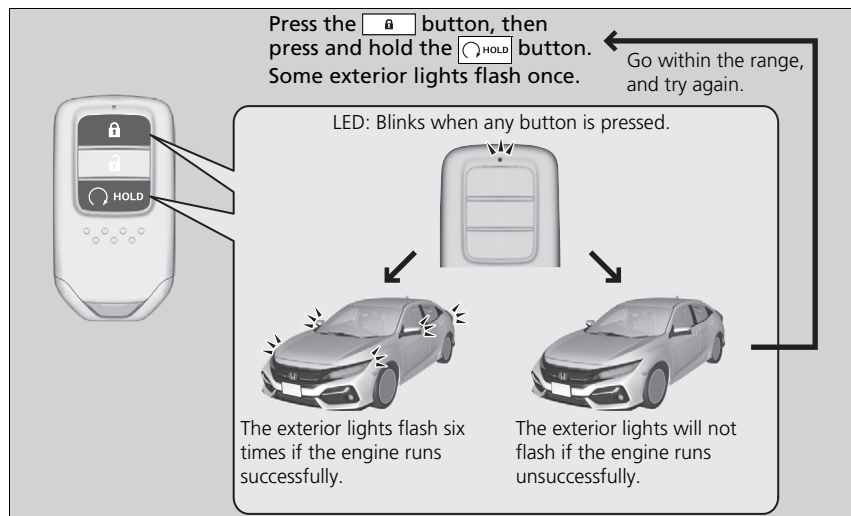
The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

► **Immobilizer System** P. 204

■ Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine



When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the button.

- ▶ The exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

▶▶ Remote Engine Start*

⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

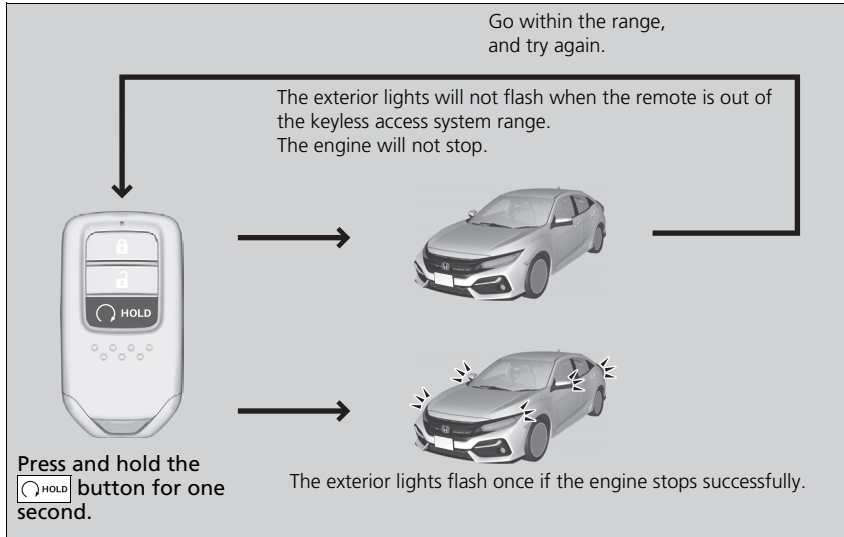
The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The transmission is in a position other than **P**.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the hatch is unlocked.

■ To stop the engine



▶▶▶ Remote Engine Start*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically activate climate control with a preset temperature of 22°C.

When it is warm outside:

- The climate control system is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

* Not available on all models



■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button* on the keyless remote

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case





Continuously variable transmission models

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in . Select  when reversing.
 3. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
- **Parking Brake** P. 519


■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.


Continuously variable transmission models


Put the transmission into ,  or * when facing uphill, or  when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or  when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

» Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button* on the keyless remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of  before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

» Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

» Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

» Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I***1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

2.0 L engine models

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission *

■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

☒ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

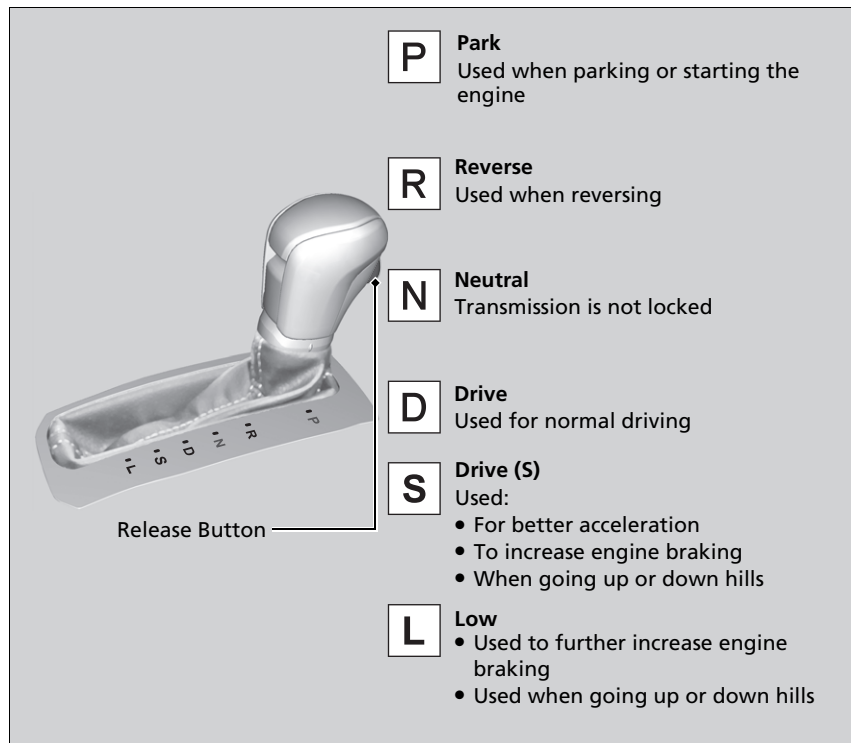
* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission models without paddle shifter

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



» Shift lever positions

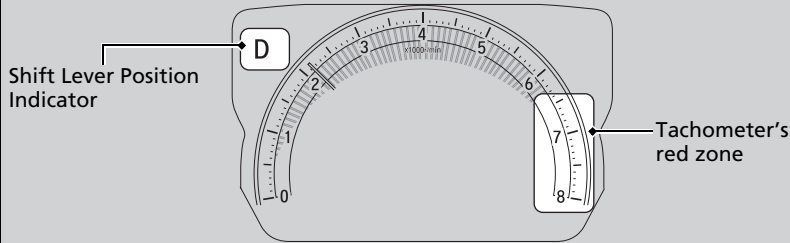
You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]***1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **[N]** while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

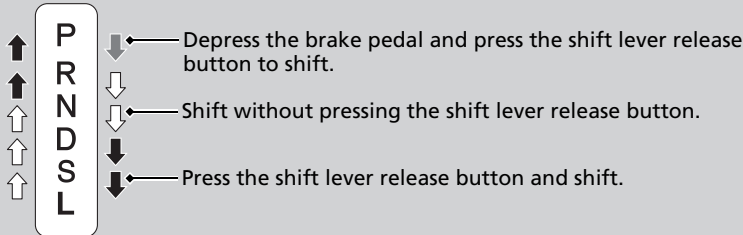
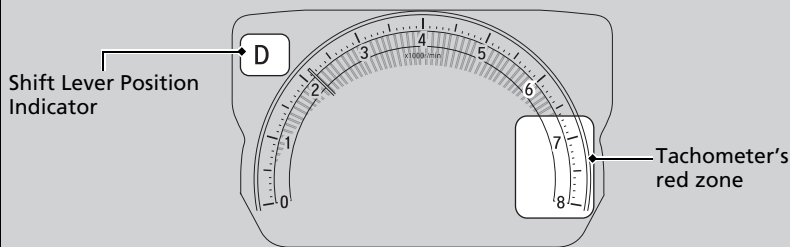
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Shift Lever Operation

1.5 L engine models



1.8 L engine models



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, blinking transmission system indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

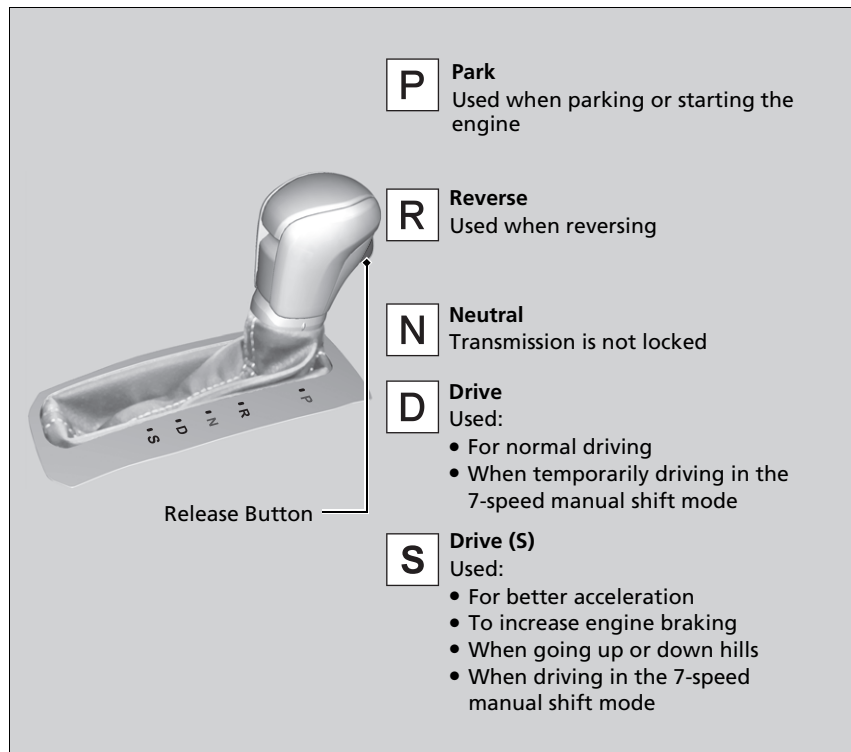
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with paddle shifter

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



►► Shift lever positions

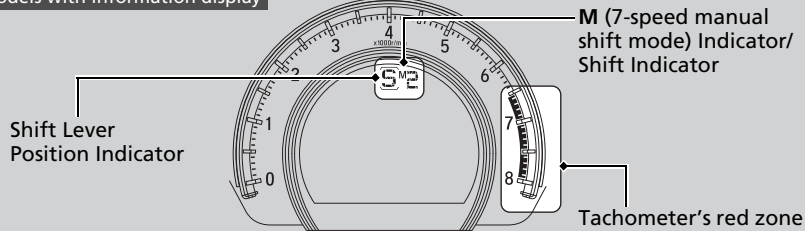
You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) unless the shift lever is in **P**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.

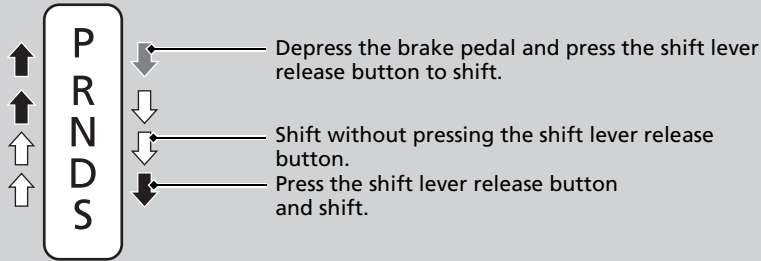
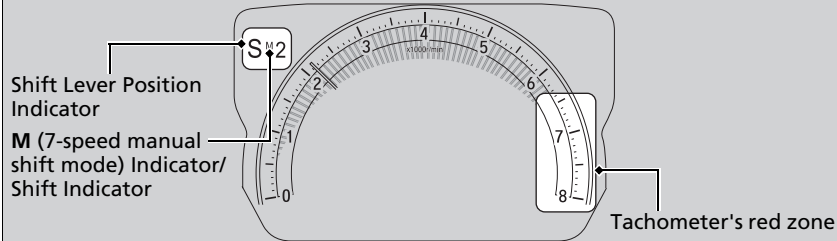
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation

Models with information display



Models with driver information interface



Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **[D]** to **[R]** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, blinking transmission system indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in **[D]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **[+]** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in **[S]**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **[S]** to **[D]**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

» 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

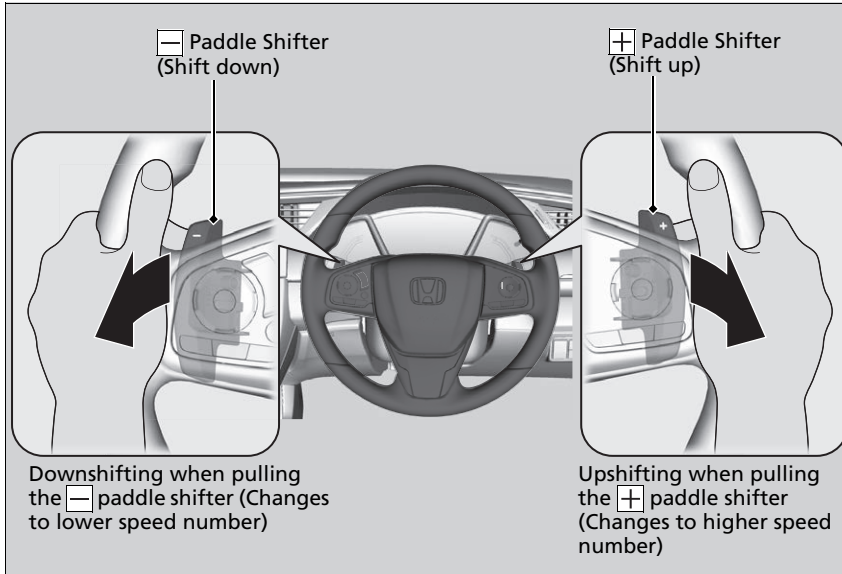
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **[D]** driving mode.

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

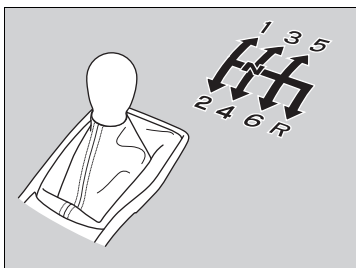
Manual transmission models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Rev Match System

Adjusts the engine's RPM to match the optimal speed of the gear that is about to be engaged.

🔧 **Drive Mode Switch** P. 429

Limitations

The rev match system will not activate under the following conditions:

- You are shifting into a lower gear, but the system has determined that the engine will over rev.
- You are shifting into 1st gear from a higher gear.
- Engine RPM is low and you are shifting into a lower gear in sequential order.
- The system has determined that the engine will be at idling speed after you have shifted into a higher gear.
- The clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

The rev match system may deactivate if the clutch is kept engaged for a extended period of time.

Rev Match System

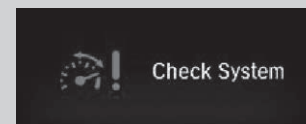
You can turn off the rev match system using the audio/information screen.

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 343

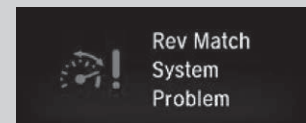
If you depress the accelerator pedal while changing gears, the system will give priority to inputs from the accelerator pedal.

If the message below appears, there may be a problem with the system. The rev match system may not operate, but you can perform regular gear shifting. Have the system checked by a dealer.

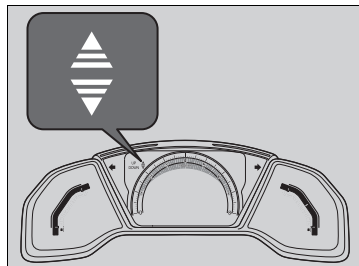
Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type



■ Shift Up/Down Indicators *



Models without Honda Sensing

Come on to indicate when a gear change is appropriate to maintain the most fuel efficient driving style.

Models with Honda Sensing

Come on to inform you that upshifting or downshifting is necessary to prevent the engine from over revving or stalling.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

►► Shift Up/Down Indicators *

Models without Honda Sensing

⚠ WARNING

The shift indicator is only a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

Models without Honda Sensing

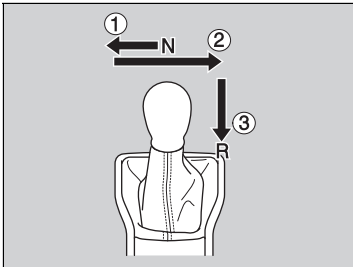
The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from **2** to **1**.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

■ Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

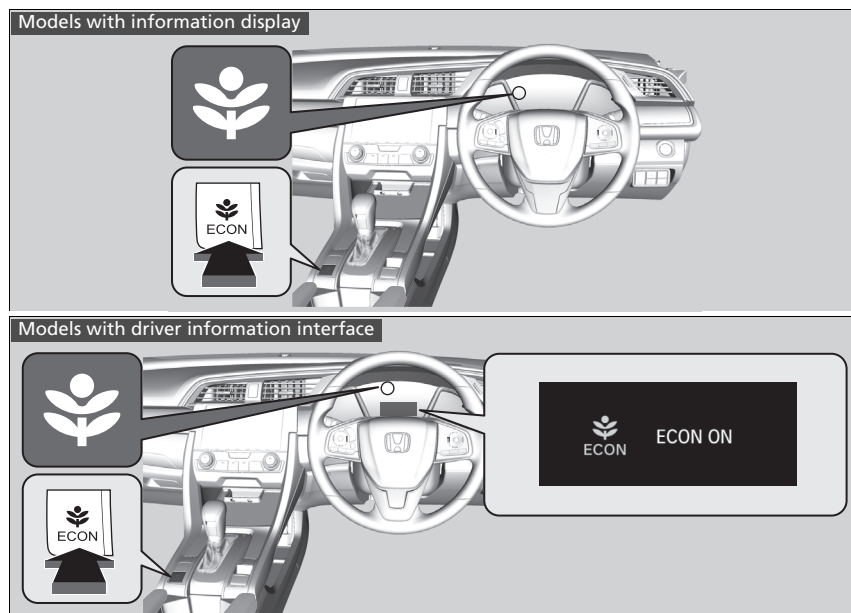
If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

ECON Mode*



»ECON Mode*

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

1.5 L engine models

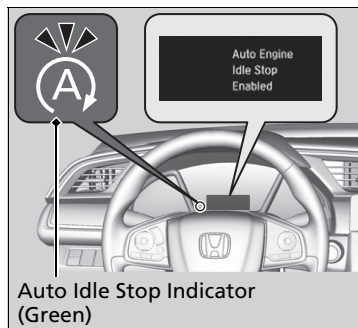
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the climate control system and cruise control*.

1.8 L engine models

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, climate control system and cruise control.

Auto Idle Stop*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again (when you depress the clutch pedal on manual transmission models), and the indicator (green) goes off.

➤ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:**
P. 427

The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➤ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:**
P. 425, 426

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

➤ **Indicators** P. 104

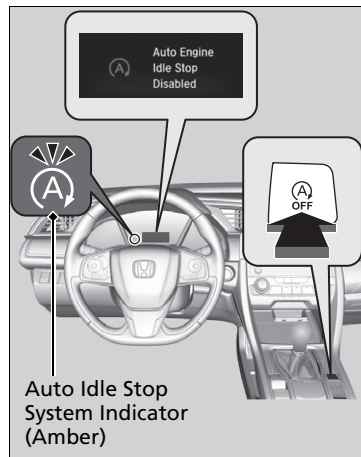
➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

Auto Idle Stop*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 684

■ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

- ▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.


▶▶ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

After the vehicle moves forward, stopping with the brake, the clutch pedal fully depressed, the shift lever in **[N]**, and then the clutch pedal is released.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 3 km/h after the engine starts.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
 - ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- The shift lever is in any position except **[N]**.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
-  is on (indicator is on).
- The drive mode is changed to **+R** mode.

⌘ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open a bonnet, while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

➤ **Starting the Engine** P. 404

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

➤ **Starting the Engine** P. 404

■ **Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The fan speed is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.

■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

The clutch pedal is depressed.

■ The engine automatically restarts even if the clutch pedal is not depressed with the transmission in **N** when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- A steering wheel is operated.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The drive mode is changed to **+R** mode.

⌘ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

The engine does not restart automatically when there is a problem in the system. Follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 404

The engine does not restart automatically when:

- The driver's seat belt is unlatched. To keep Auto Idle Stop activated, fasten your seat belt immediately.
- The transmission is put into a position other than **N**.

Put the transmission into **N**.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages*** P. 138

When the system stops operating, follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 404


■ When indicator light (Green) blinks in Auto Idle Stop

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

- The engine automatically restarts.

⌘ When indicator light (Green) blinks in Auto Idle Stop

The indicator starts blinking rapidly under the following conditions:

-  button is pressed.
- When the climate control system is in use and moisture builds up inside the vehicle.
- When the climate control system is in use and the difference between the set temperature and the actual temperature inside the vehicle becomes significant.

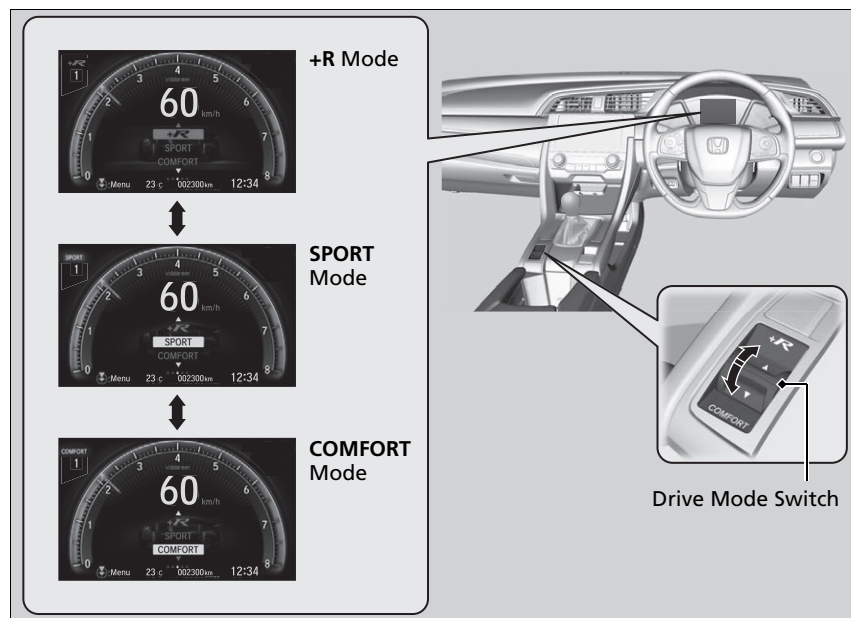
2.0 L engine models

Drive Mode Switch

Constantly controls your vehicle's engine, transmission, EPS, dampers, brakes and VSA according to the mode you select.

You can choose between three modes, **+R** mode, **SPORT** mode and **COMFORT** mode by moving the drive mode switch forward or back.

The current mode is displayed on the driver information interface, and each mode will appear differently.

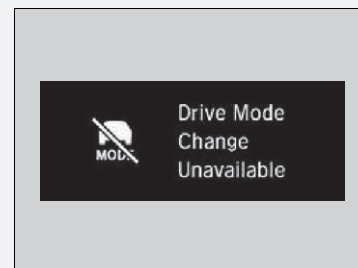


Drive Mode Switch

SPORT mode is selected every time you set the power mode to ON.

The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If mode change is necessary, reduce speed or cornering speed.

This message will also appear if you try to change modes when there is a vehicle system failure.



Category		COMFORT	SPORT	+R
Chassis Control	Steering	Light feedback for easy driving.	Increased feedback for sport driving.	Increased feedback for high performance driving.
	Suspension Damping	Minimised to provide a soft ride.	Increased to provide improved handling for sport driving.	Maximised to provide responsive handling for high performance driving.
	VSA and TCS	Balanced calibration for VSA and Traction control in all environments.		Track oriented control allowing increased freedom for the driver.
Powertrain Control	Acceleration Feeling	Relaxed	Aggressive	Aggressive
	Rev Match System	Seamless	Seamless	Responsive

📖 **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 445

📖 **Rev Match System** P. 419

Models without Adjustable Speed Limiter

Cruise Control *

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

Models with information display

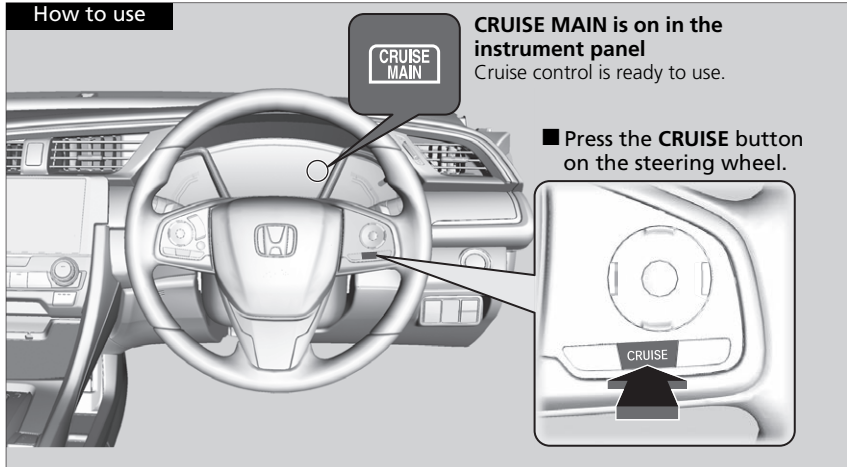
When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above
roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **D** or **S**

Always keep sufficient distance
between you and the vehicle in
front of you



How to use



* Not available on all models

Continued

⚠ Cruise Control *

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode*, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

Models with driver information interface

When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:
Desired speed in a range above
roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:
In **2** or higher position

Always keep sufficient distance
between you and the vehicle in
front of you



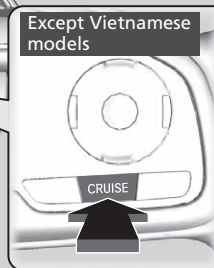
How to use

CRUISE MAIN is on in the
instrument panel

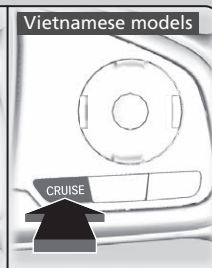
Cruise control is ready to use.

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.

Except Vietnamese
models

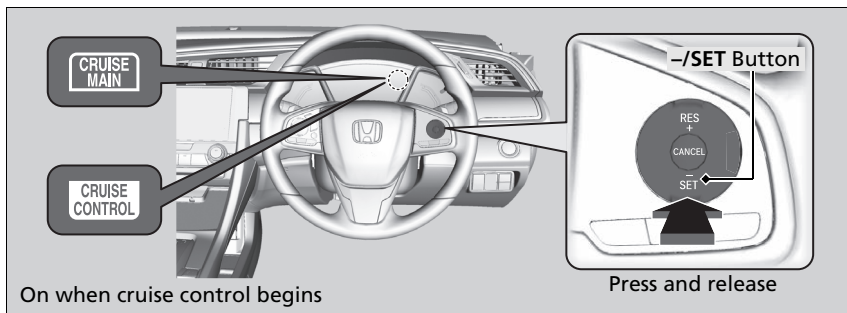


Vietnamese models

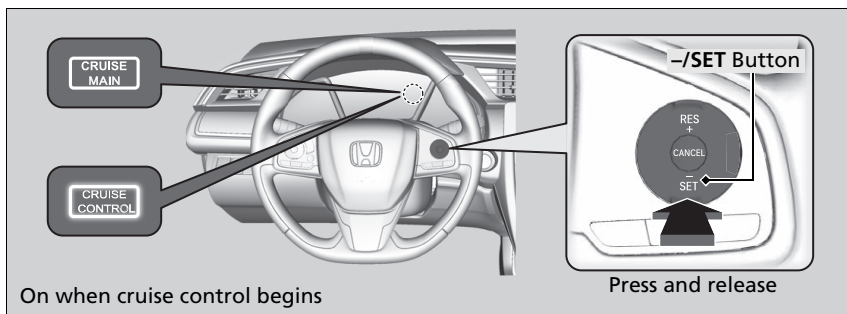


■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

Models with information display



Models with driver information interface



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

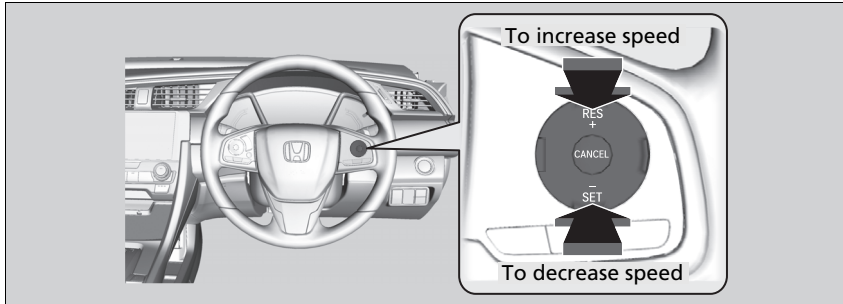
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.

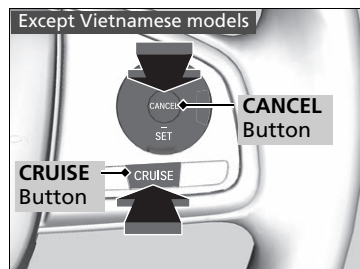
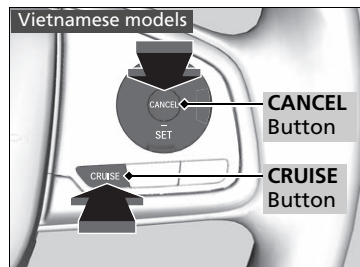


- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

▣ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal* for five seconds or more.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

►► To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Models with Adjustable Speed Limiter

Cruise Control *

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

►► Cruise Control *

WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **MAIN** button.

While in ECON mode*, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

You cannot use the cruise control and the adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

* Not available on all models

Continued

When to use

- **Vehicle speed for cruise control:**
Desired speed in a range from
about 30 km/h to about 200 km/h

Continuously variable transmission models

- **Shift positions for cruise control:**
In **D** or **S**

Manual transmission models

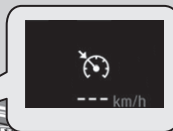
- **Shift positions for cruise control:**
In **2** or higher position

Always keep sufficient distance
between you and the vehicle in
front of you

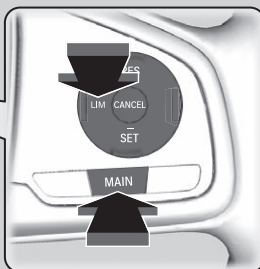


How to use

**The indicator is on in the
instrument panel**
Cruise control is ready to use.

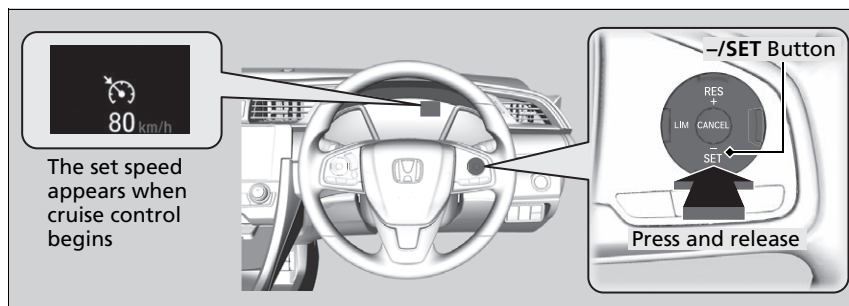


- **Press the MAIN
button on the
steering wheel**



If a different indicator comes on, press the
LIM button to switch to cruise control.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

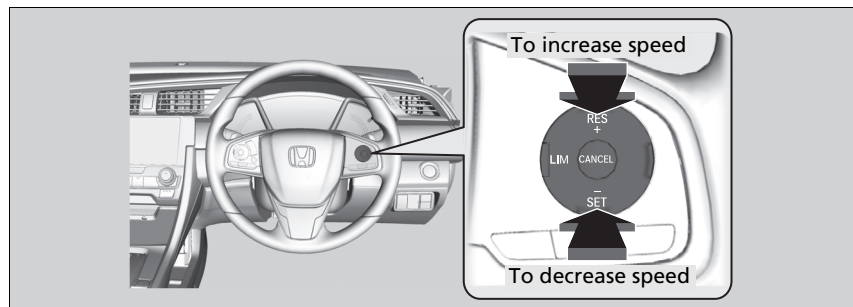
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

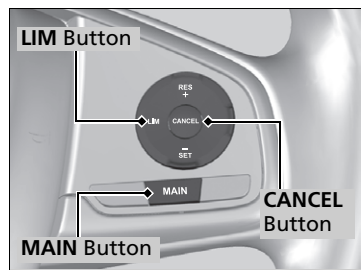
■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h.

■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal* for five seconds or more.

The displayed set speed goes off.

▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 25 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 250 km/h.

2.0 L engine models

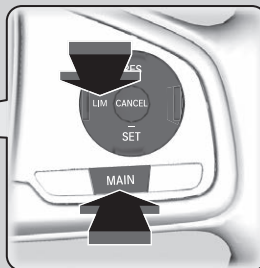
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 320 km/h.

How to use

The indicator is on in the instrument panel
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.



■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

⚠ WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary. Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

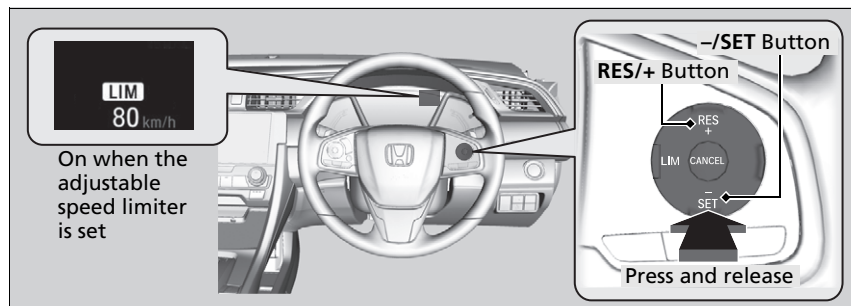
You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and the cruise control*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* at the same time.

Manual transmission models

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

* Not available on all models

■ To Set the Speed Limit



- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

▶▶ To Set the Vehicle Speed

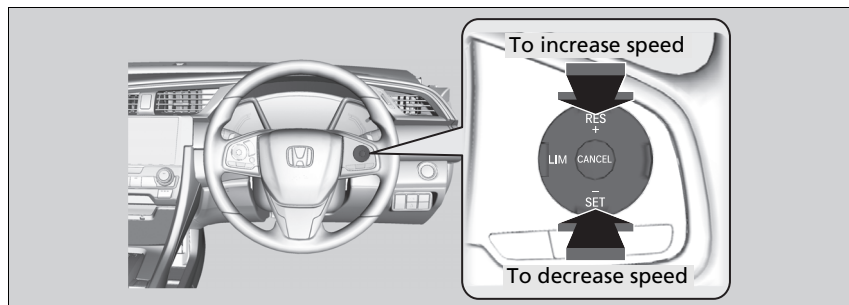
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

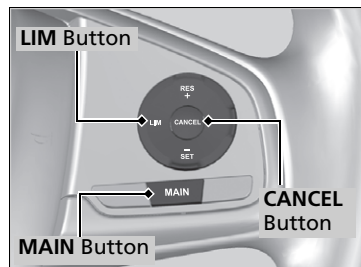
- ▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.
- ▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

⚠ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

■ To Cancel

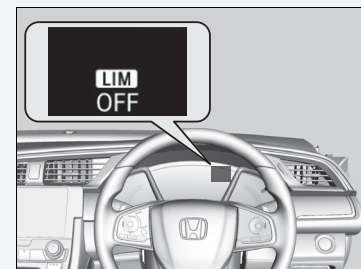


To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

▶▶ To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into cruise control*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* if the **LIM** button is pressed.

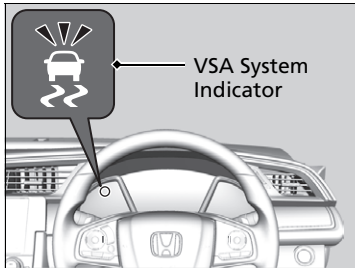


If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

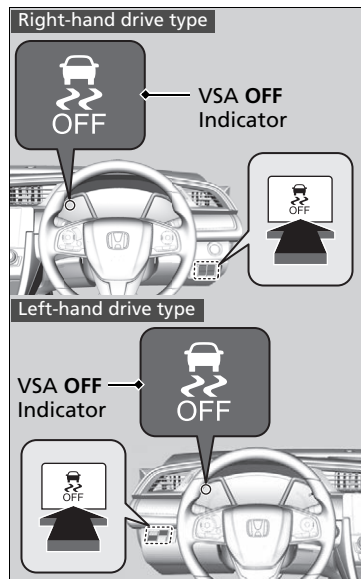
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, Deflation Warning System* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.


* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

2.0 L engine models

■ When the drive mode is in +R mode



To completely disable VSA, the VSA must be in **+R** mode. Press and hold the VSA OFF button until you hear a single beep, then later two more beeps.

- ▶ This message appears on the driver information interface.

To resume VSA full function, press the VSA OFF button until a single beep is heard.

If VSA OFF mode is selected, and drive mode is changed to a mode other than **+R**, VSA full function will resume, and the VSA OFF indicator will go off.

▶▶ When the drive mode is in +R mode

In OFF mode, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off.

We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control system switched off.

Models with Honda Sensing

When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS). If either feature is in use when you completely disable VSA, the feature in use will automatically be cancelled.

Road Departure Mitigation System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) do not function while VSA is completely disabled.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

⚡ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

2.0 L engine models

Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

LSD (limited slip differential) is a type of differential that delivers extra torque to the wheel or the wheels with the most traction to minimise wheel slip and maintain control of the vehicle.

» Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

NOTICE

Make sure both front tyres of your vehicle are of the same brand and specified size, and have equal wear. Otherwise, the LSD may not function properly.

Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine

Deflation Warning System

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h.


When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.

■ Deflation Warning System Initialisation

For proper use, initialise the system after the tyres are:

- Inflated to the recommended pressures
- Changed or rotated

» Deflation Warning System

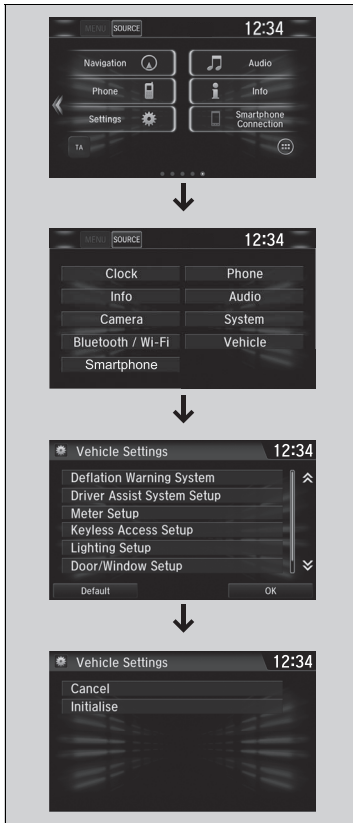
When a decrease in tyre pressure is detected, the deflation warning system indicator comes on with  on the driver information interface.

» **Deflation Warning System Indicator***
P. 118

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

» **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 597



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

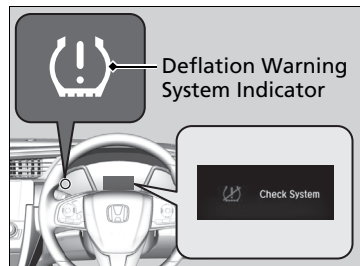
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Select .
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 6.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

■ Deflation Warning System Indicator



■ The indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- Any of the tyre's pressures is low.
- The system has not been initialised.
- A compact spare tyre is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer*, than the condition at initialisation.

» Deflation Warning System Indicator

The indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

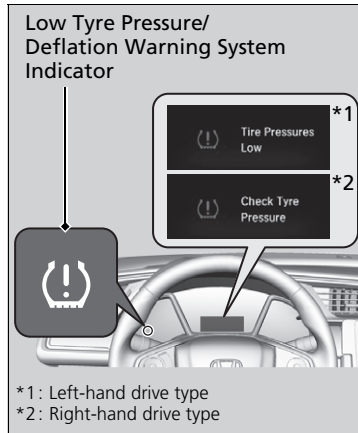
- Two or more tyre's pressure are low.
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains* are used.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Oceanian, Indonesian, and Vietnamese models with 2.0 L engine

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 597

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains* are used.

* Not available on all models

■ Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

■ **Checking Tyres** P. 597

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **[N]**.
- The power mode is in ON.

» Deflation Warning System Initialisation

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at initialisation.

Tyre chains* are used.

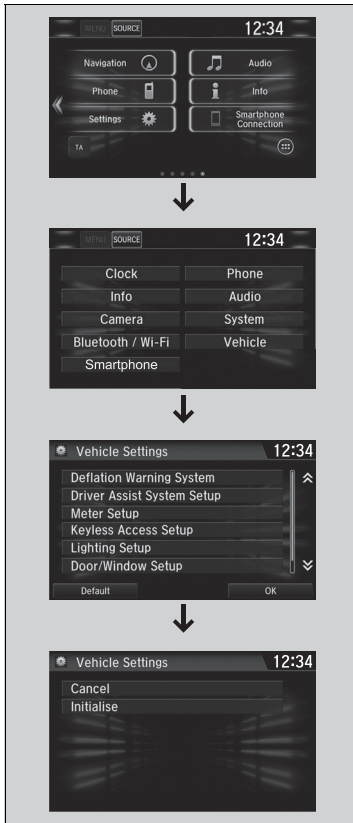
The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 48–105 km/h.

During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains* are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Select **HOME**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

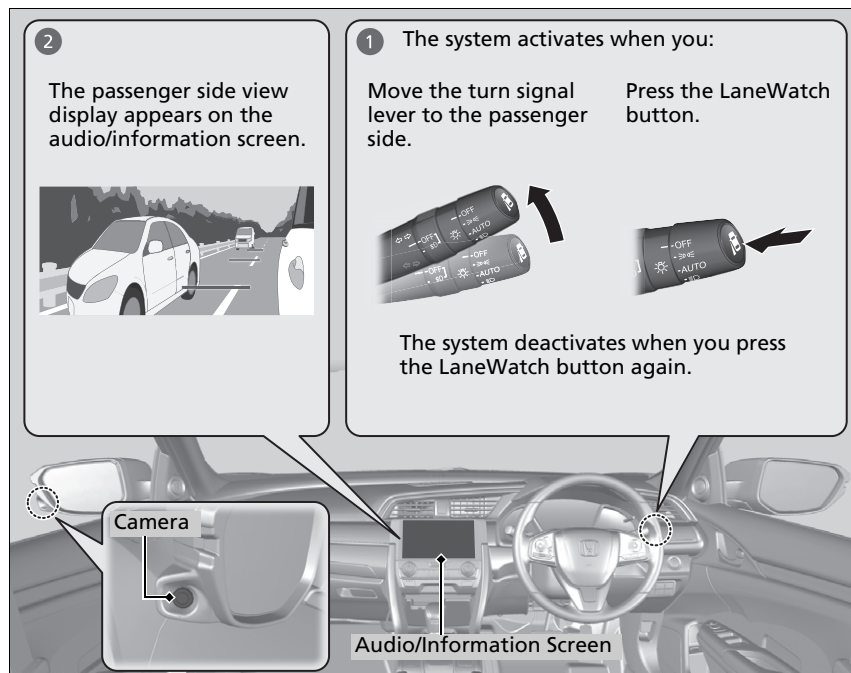
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 6.
- The Initialisation process finishes automatically.

»» Deflation Warning System Initialisation

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Road Departure Mitigation*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

LaneWatch*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



▶ LaneWatch*

⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

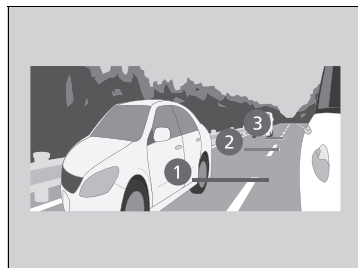
■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off:** Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display:** Allows for display adjustments of items, such as brightness, contrast and black level. This setting is part of the **System** setup group.

📖 **Customized Features** P. 343

■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

📺 LaneWatch*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **[R]**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

📺 Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

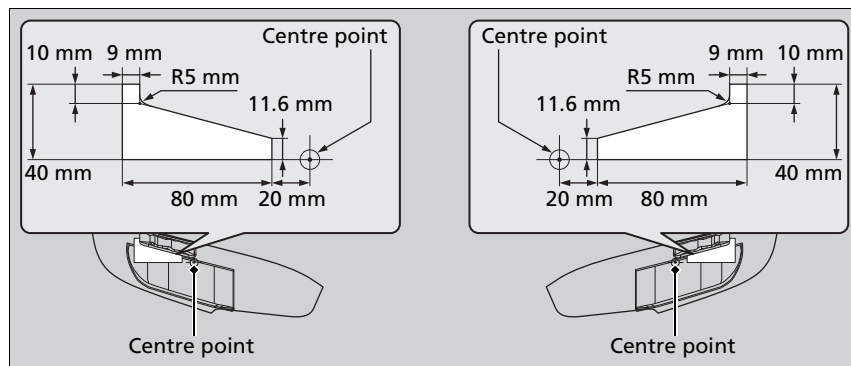
* Not available on all models

Oceanian 1.5 L engine models with LED headlights

Malaysian models

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 80 mm long.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located in the lower bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➡ P. 462
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➡ P. 510

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

Continuously variable transmission models

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ➡ P. 473

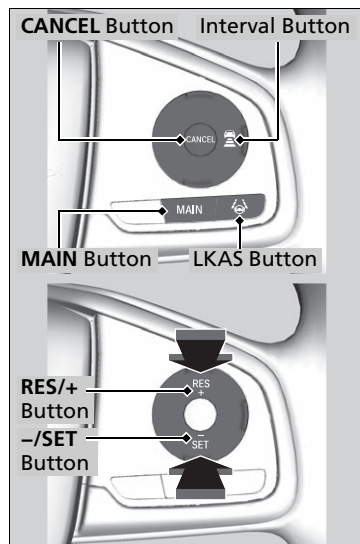
Manual transmission models

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ➡ P. 488

All models

- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➡ P. 502

■ Operation Switches for the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*/LKAS



■ MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

■ LKAS Button


Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.

■ RES/+/-/SET Button

Press **RES/+** to resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or increase the vehicle speed.

Press **-/SET** to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or decrease the vehicle speed.

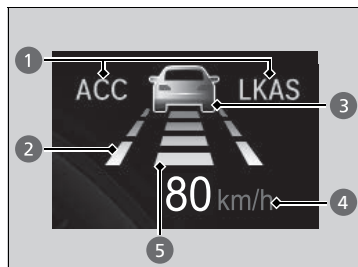
■ Interval Button

Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* following-interval.

■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*.

■ Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS.

- ① Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* and LKAS are ready to be activated.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- ③ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.
- ④ Shows the set vehicle speed.
- ⑤ Shows the set vehicle interval.

* Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

▶▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Manual transmission models

When the CMBS activates, the engine may stop automatically.

Start the engine by normal operation if the engine stops.

📖 **Starting the Engine** P. 401, 404

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

📖 **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 467

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

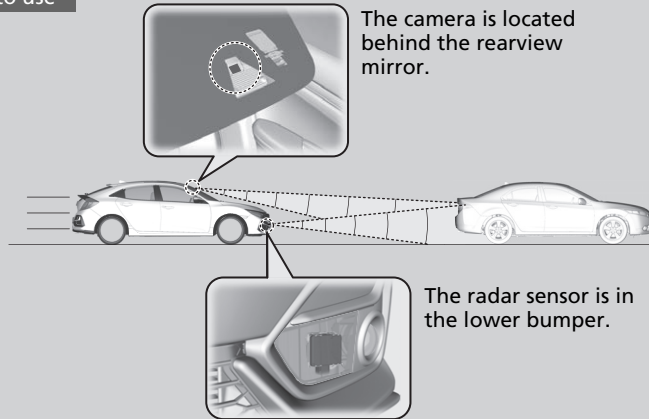
📖 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

📖 **Radar Sensor** P. 518

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
 - Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or travelling in your same direction.
 - A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h, and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you travelling in your same direction.

▶▶ How the system works

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

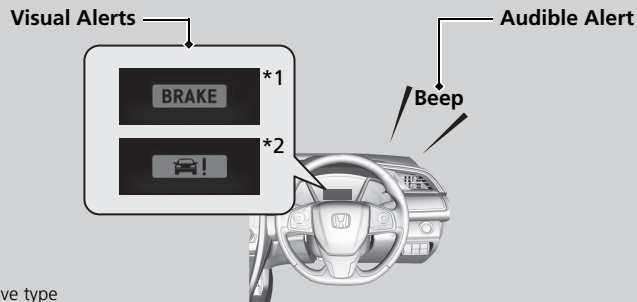
2.0 L engine models

CMBS does not function while VSA is completely disabled.

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



*1: Left-hand drive type
*2: Right-hand drive type

At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through audio/information screen setting options.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

▶▶ When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

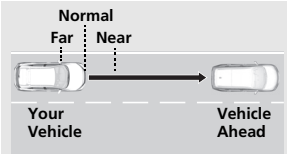
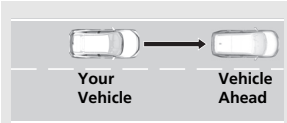
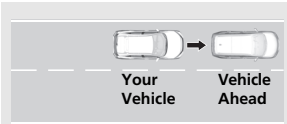
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

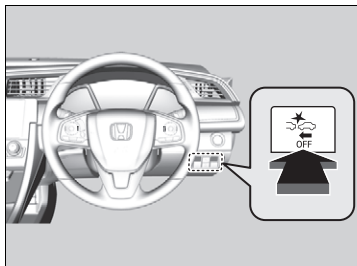
▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 467

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in Far , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near , at a shorter distance than in Normal .	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

■ CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 467

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, Deflation Warning System* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after reconnecting the battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be detected).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

🔧 CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- When tyre chains* are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Oceanian models without centre exhaust silencer

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

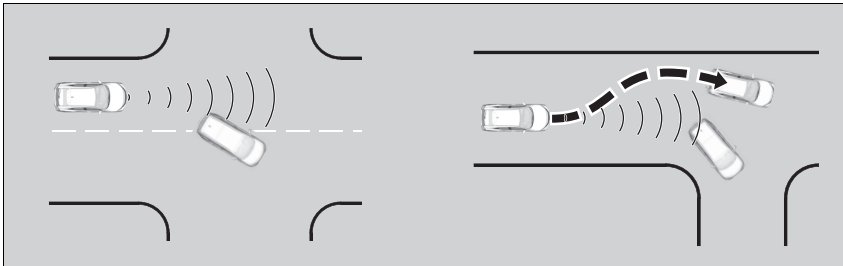
The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

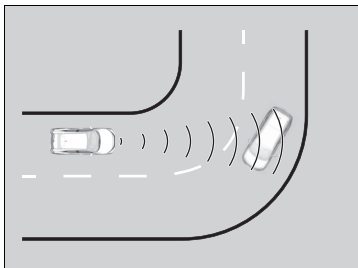


▶▶ With Little Chance of a Collision

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to the radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS operation.

■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

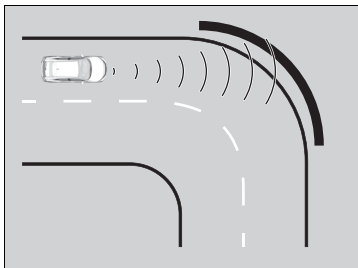


■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.



Continuously variable transmission models

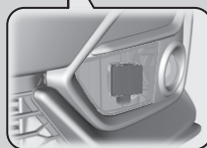
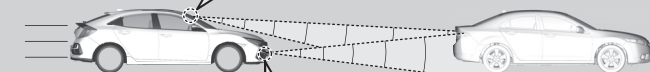
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower bumper.
Be careful not to hit the radar sensor cover. Strong impact can damage it.

■ Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.

No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.

■ Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In **D** or **S**.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➤ **Radar Sensor** P. 518

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

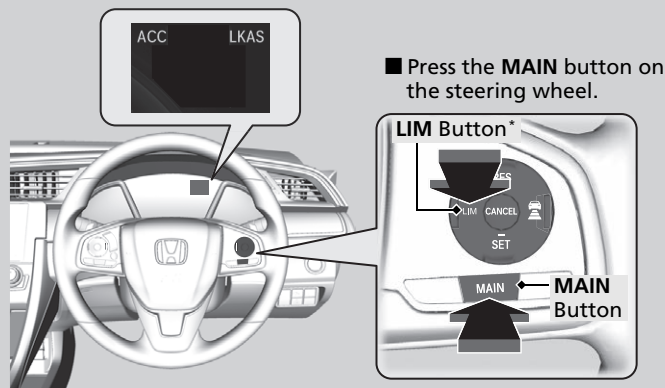
➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

Continued

■ How to activate the system

How to use

ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.



If a different instrument panel is displayed, press the **LIM** button* to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The radar sensor for ACC with Low Speed Follow is shared with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS).

▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 462

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

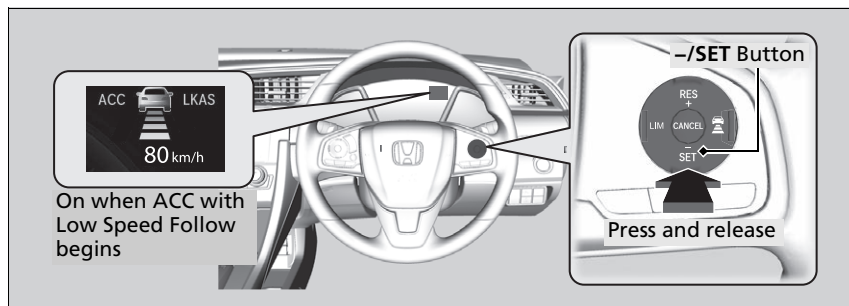
▶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 480

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Thai models

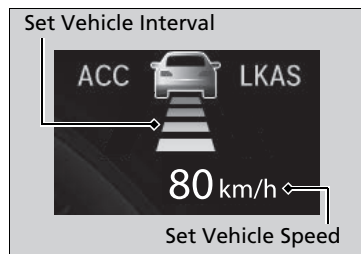
CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.

This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Deflation Warning System* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

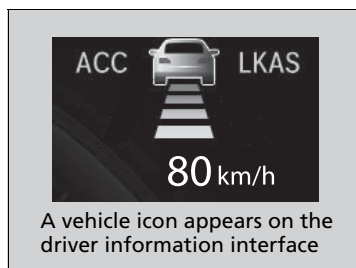
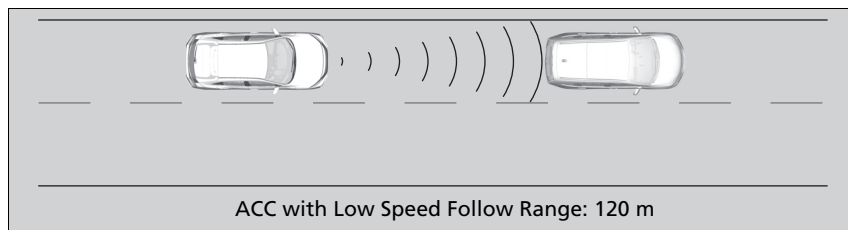
When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated. By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

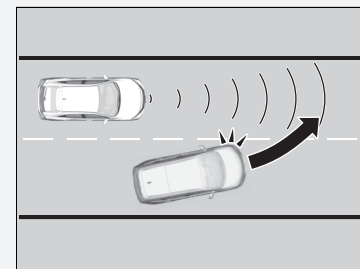
🚦 **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 484



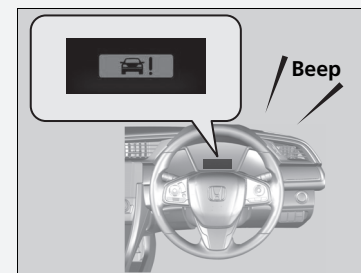
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

⌘ When in Operation

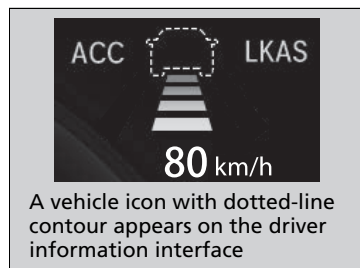
If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

▶ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.

Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

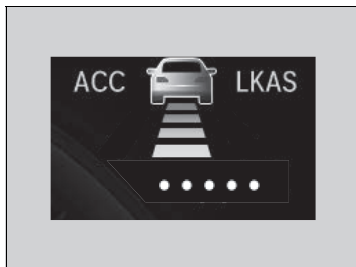
▶ **Customized Features** P. 343


Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The  message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

▶▶ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

⚠ WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains* are installed.

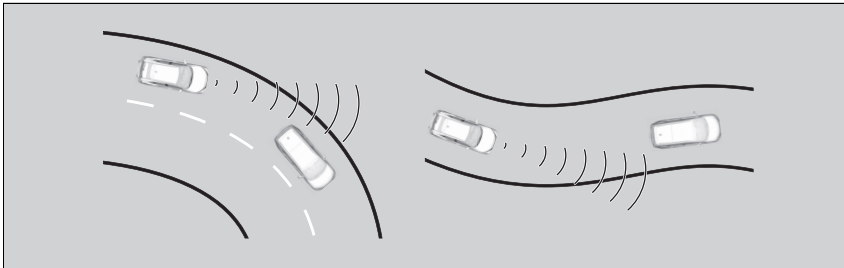
📷 ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



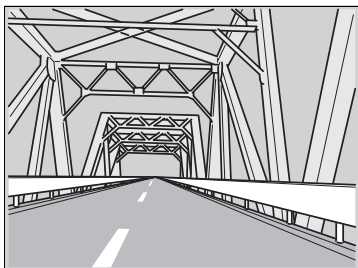
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

⚠ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

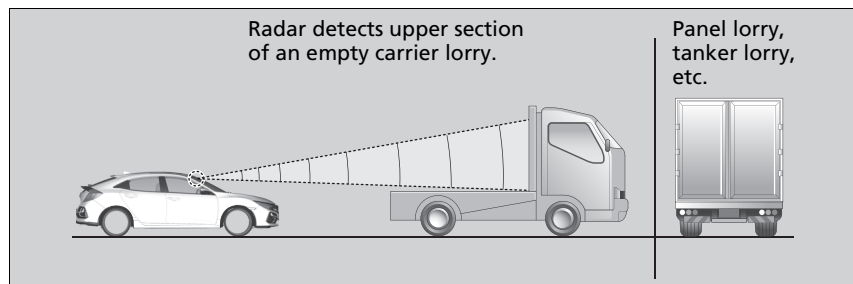
If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



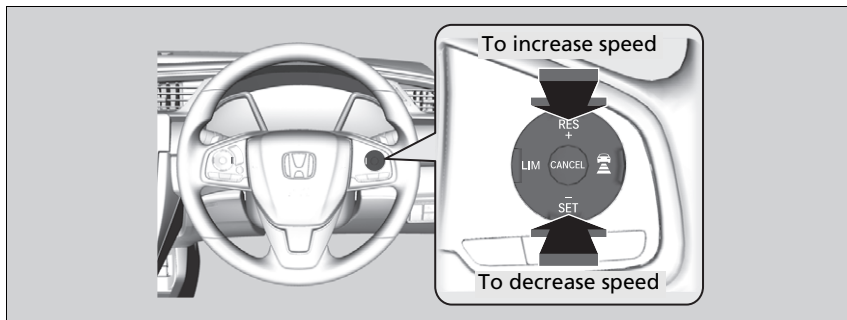
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button on the steering wheel.



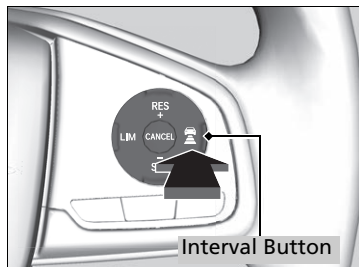
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.


▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval







Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

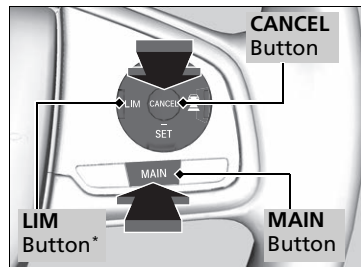
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		24.7 metres 1.1 sec	31.5 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		34.2 metres 1.5 sec	43.4 meters 1.5 sec
Long		46.8 metres 2.1 sec	60.8 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		63.5 metres 2.9 sec	83.4 metres 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

⌘ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking distance from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum distances or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
 - ▶ **ACC** with Low Speed Follow indicator goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button*.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

⌘ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves, then press the **-/SET** button.

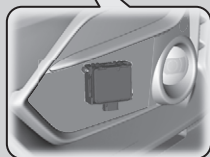
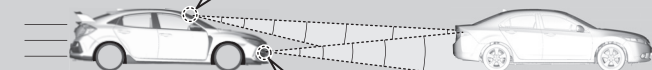
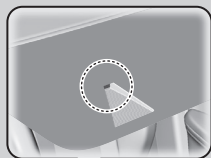
Manual transmission models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower bumper.

- Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h ~
- Shift position for ACC: in **2** or higher position

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

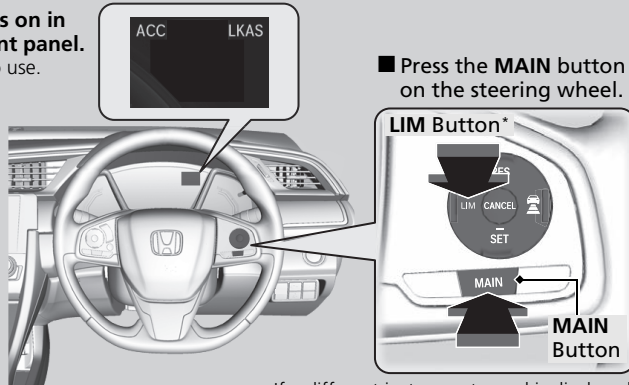
For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 518

■ How to activate the system

How to use

ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.
ACC is ready to use.



■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.

If a different instrument panel is displayed, press the **LIM** button* to change it to ACC.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).

▶ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 462

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 494

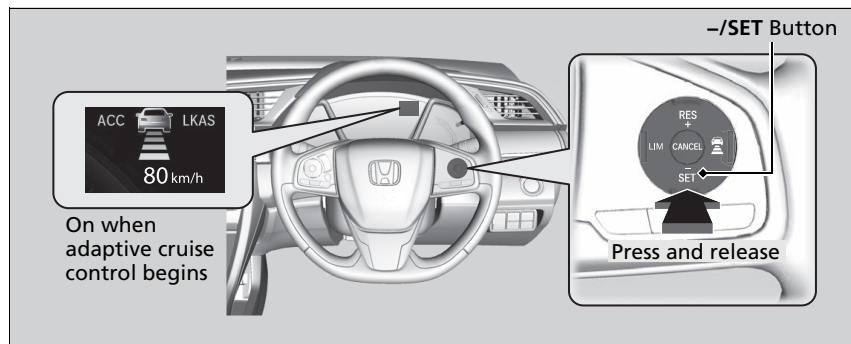
When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

When the engine speed goes up, try to upshift. You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

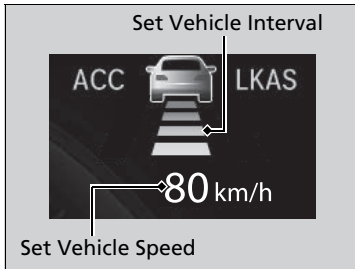
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

You cannot use the ACC and the adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use ACC.



The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

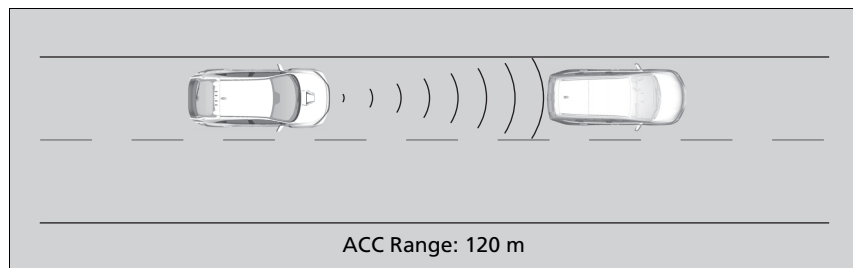
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

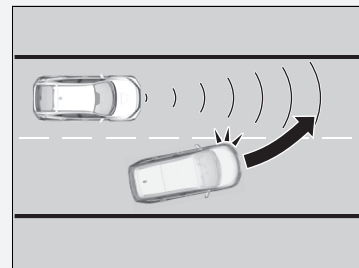
➤ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 498



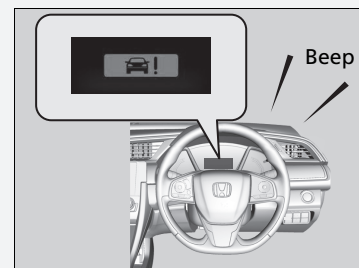
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

▶ When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

▶▶ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC.

Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 494

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

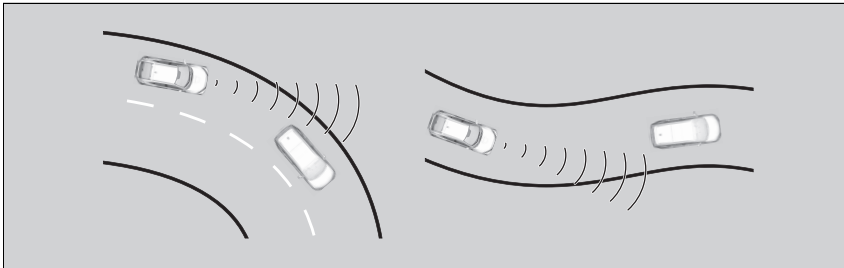
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains* are installed.

📷 ACC Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

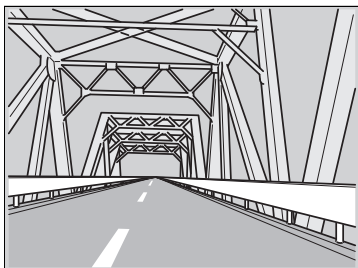
▣ ACC Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

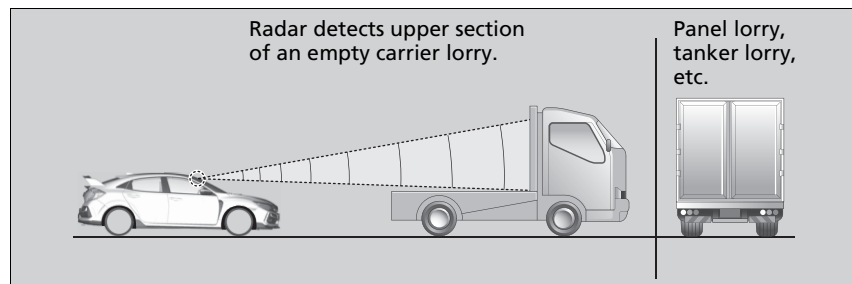
If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



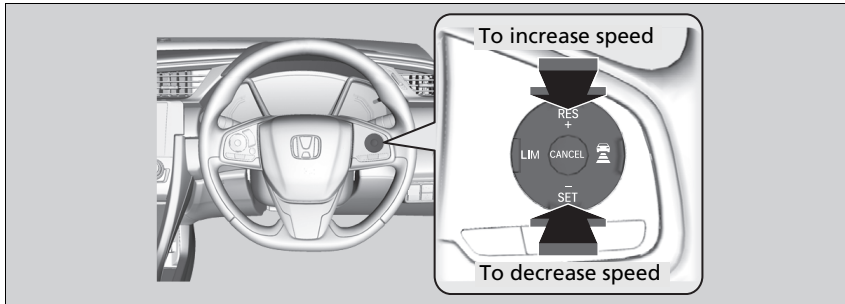
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



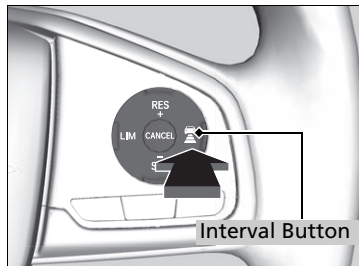
- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.


▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval






Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

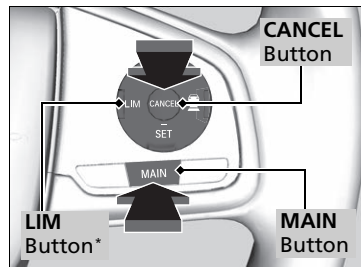
The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		25.4 metres 1.1 sec	30.6 metres 1.1 sec
Middle		33.4 metres 1.5 sec	41.9 metres 1.5 sec
Long		46.9 metres 2.1 sec	60.9 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long		65.1 metres 2.9 sec	86.2 metres 2.9 sec

⚠ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
 - **ACC** indicator goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button*.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

►► To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to be automatically cancelled.

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- Ignoring shift down indication shown in the tachometer display will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer's red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.

⌘ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **-/SET** button.

If you completely disable VSA while ACC is activated, ACC will automatically be cancelled.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

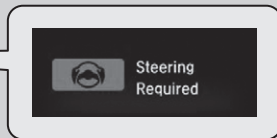
■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

▶ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* P. 138

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

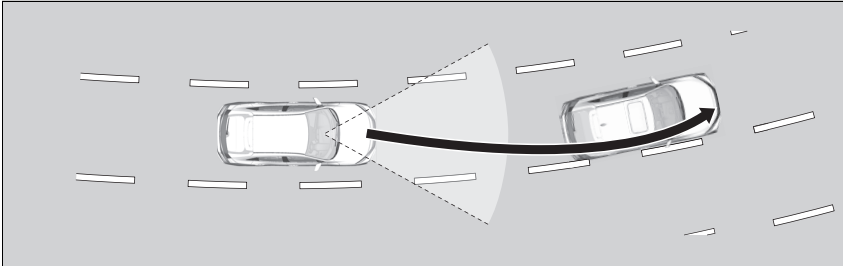
The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 507

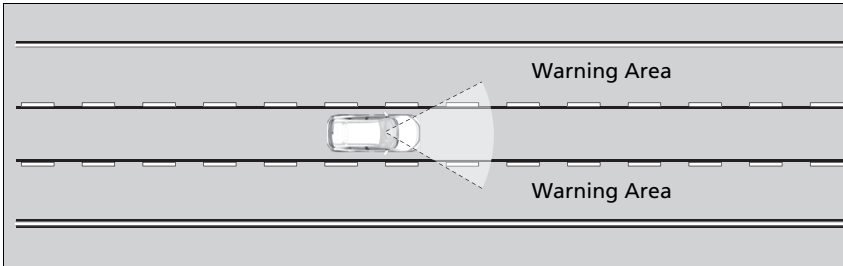
■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



▣ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▣ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

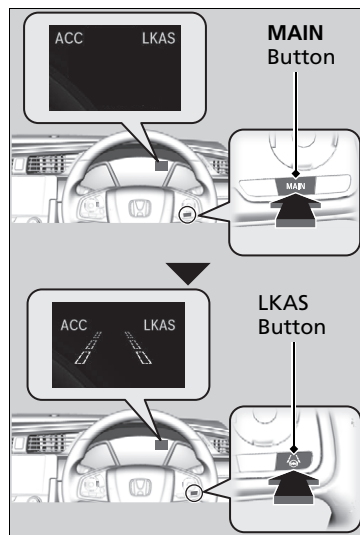
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.

- The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.
The system is ready to use.

2. Press the **LKAS** button.

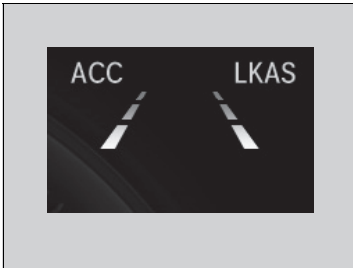
- Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
The system is activated.

►► When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

2.0 L engine models

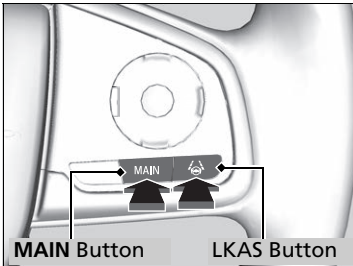
When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use LKAS.



3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

- ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

▶▶ To Cancel

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

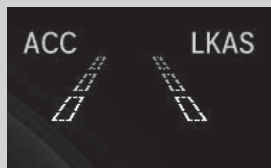
Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with Low Speed Follow on and off.

Models with ACC

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.

2.0 L engine models

If you completely disable VSA while LKAS is activated, LKAS will automatically be cancelled.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
 - ▶ Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** the wipers operate continuously.
 - ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h or less.
 - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.
- The Road Departure Mitigation system is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

▶▶ The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.

LKAS suspended beep **ON** and **OFF** can be selected.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

■ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations**

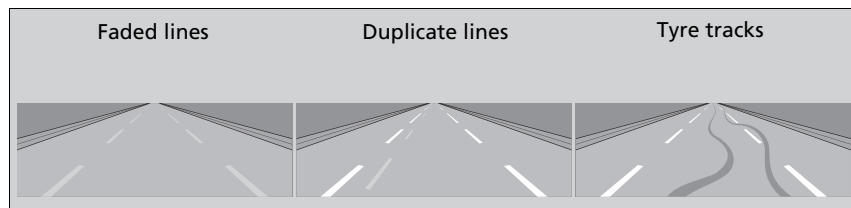
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ **Environmental conditions**

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



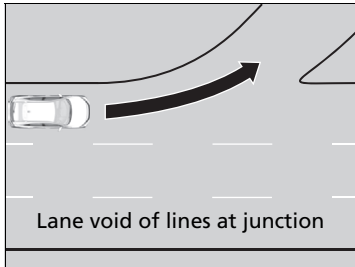
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

Very wide or narrow traffic lane



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Oceanian models without centre exhaust silencer

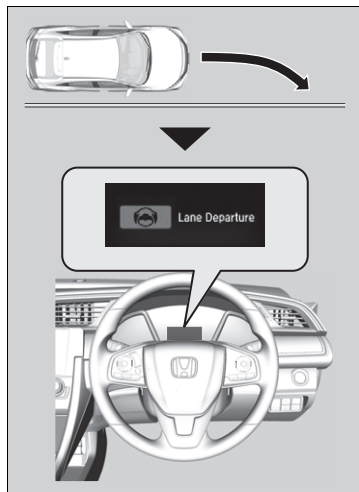
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

■ How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

As a visual alert, **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

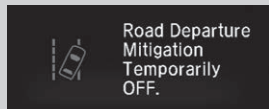
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations** P. 514

Left-hand drive type



Right-hand drive type



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.

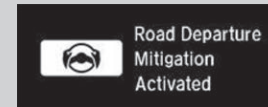
After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

Right-hand drive type

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Narrow** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 343



2.0 L engine models


The Road Departure Mitigation System does not function while VSA is completely disabled.

■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

▶▶ How the System Activates

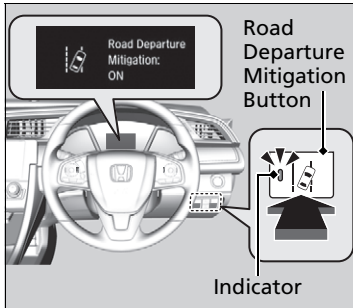
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

▶▶ **Indicators** P. 104

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

⌘ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System*, Deflation Warning System* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains* are installed.

Oceanian models without centre exhaust silencer

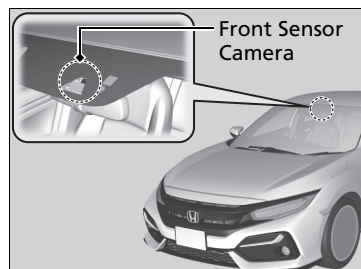
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

* Not available on all models

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.

Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

▣ Front Sensor Camera


Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.


After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera

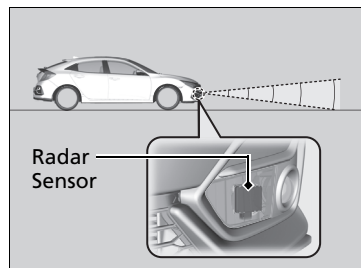
If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is at the lower part of the front bumper.

⚠ Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the CMBS **OFF** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

🔧 **CMBS On and Off** P. 466

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.




■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

■ To release

The vehicle must be ON *1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

⊠ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

⊠ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 648

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

■ To release automatically

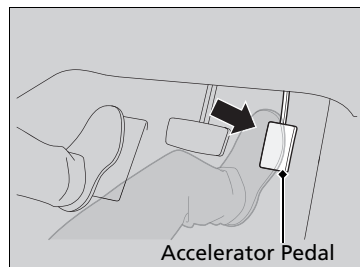
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Manual transmission models

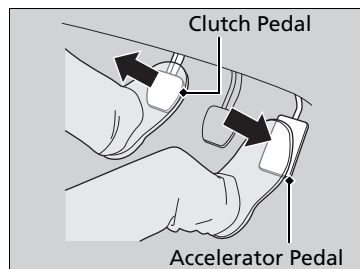
Depress the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.



Continuously variable transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.



Manual transmission models

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

►► Parking Brake

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system, while brake hold is applied.

Manual transmission models

- When there is a problem with the electric parking brake switch, after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.

Continuously variable transmission models

- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

Manual transmission models

- The transmission is not in **N**.

►► Parking Brake

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Manual transmission models

The clutch pedal is fully depressed before gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 527

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 526

2.0 L engine models

■ Brake squeal

To satisfy the performance under a wide range of driving conditions, a high-performance braking system is equipped on your vehicle. You may hear the brake squeal under certain conditions, such as vehicle speed, deceleration, humidity, and so on. This is not a malfunction.

⌘ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

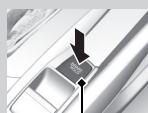
Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Automatic Brake Hold

Continuously variable transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system

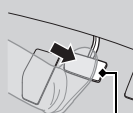


Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

■ Activating the system

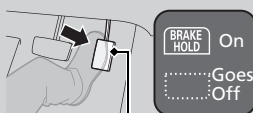


Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in **P** or **R**.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



Accelerator Pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than **P** or **N**. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

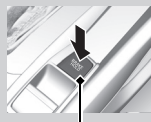
Manual transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you shift into one of the gears other than **N** and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system

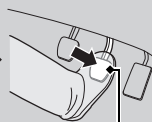


Automatic Brake Hold Button

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

■ Activating the system

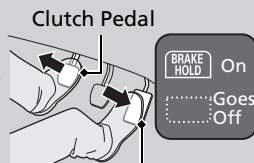


Brake Pedal

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



Accelerator Pedal

Shift into one of the gears other than **N** and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** or **R**.

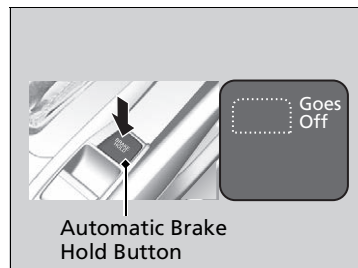
■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Manual transmission models

- The engine stalls.

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 529

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Manual transmission models

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

►► Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle is accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Depress the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

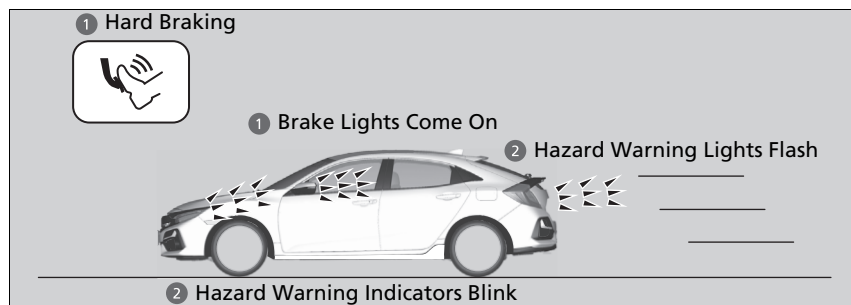
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

» Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to **P**.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.

All models

4. Turn off the engine.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 15 seconds.

» Parking Your Vehicle

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift lever position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

» When Stopped

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

Always confirm that the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

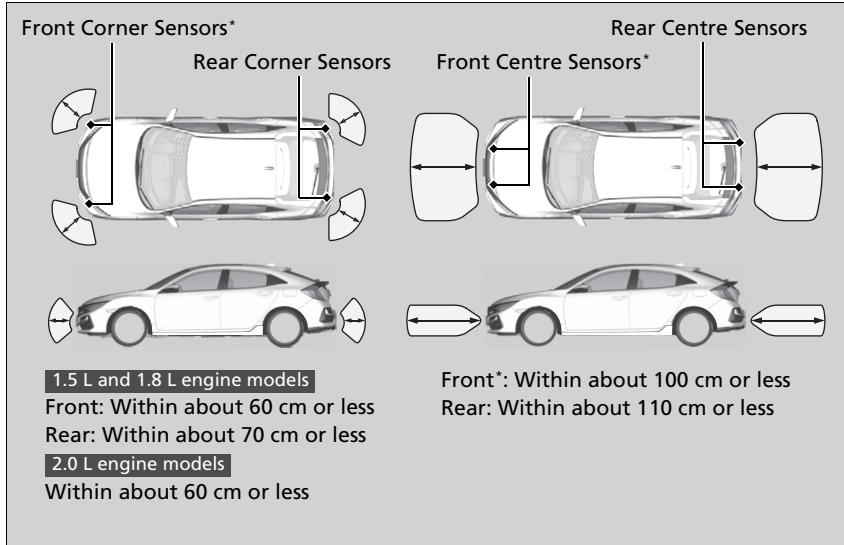
⌘ When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



▣ Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

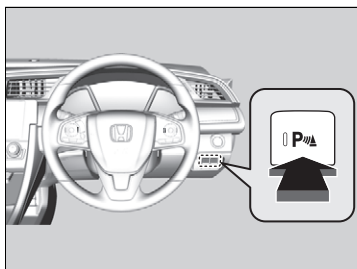
The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

* Not available on all models

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner* and front centre sensors* start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner*, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.



Manual transmission models

You also need to release the parking brake.

►► Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen/ Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front*: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*3	 Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle
Short	Front*: About 60-45 cm Rear*1: About 70-45 cm Rear*2: About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	 Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.

*1:1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

*2:2.0 L engine models

*3:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

*4:Audio/information screen

*5:Driver information interface

■ Turning off All Rear Sensors*

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
 - The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

⌘ Turning off All Rear Sensors*

When you set the gear position to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

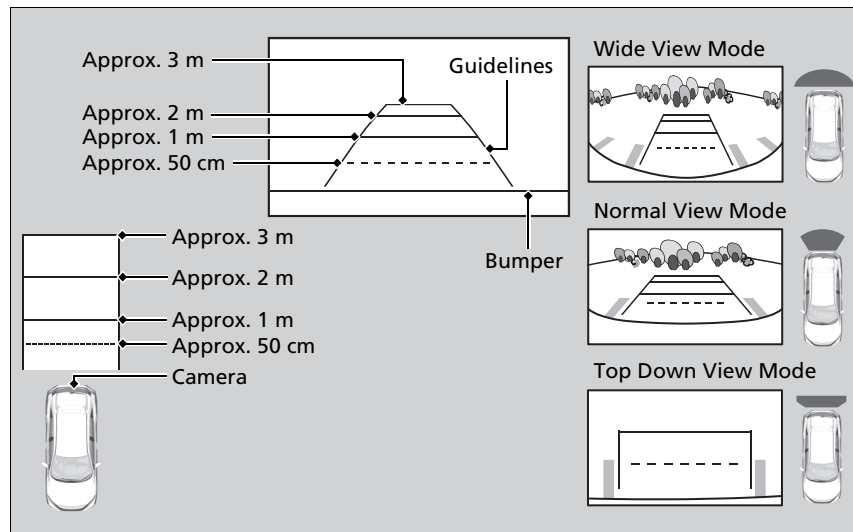
About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.

The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into

R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 343

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

Off: Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera modes on the rearview display.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



: Wide view mode



: Normal view mode



: Top down view mode

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal view mode, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide View mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II***1 and put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used more than 10 seconds after you shift from **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Thai models

Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

Other models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 47 L**

» Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

2.0 L engine models

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Except Hongkong, Macau, Vietnamese and Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Hongkong and Macau models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

We recommend that you use a research octane of 98 or higher to maximize the performance of the engine.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

» Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Vietnamese models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

We recommend that you use a research octane of 98 or higher to maximize the performance of the engine.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

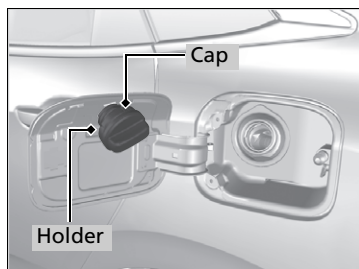
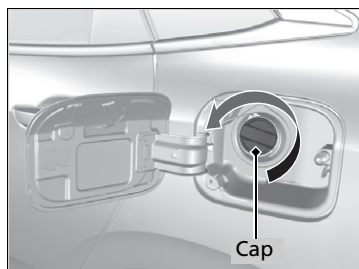
Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 46.9 L**

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
5. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
6. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
7. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
 - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
8. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

2.0 L engine models

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.

How to Refuel

⚠ WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

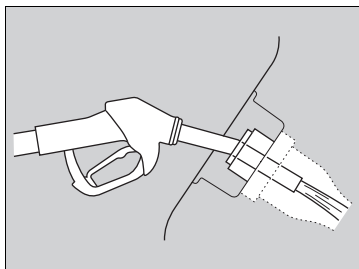
The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

Continued



5. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
 - Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
 - Keep the filler nozzle level.
 - When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
 - After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.
6. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

► How to Refuel

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

► **Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container**
P. 681

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 557

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended by the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

* Not available on all models

1.5 L and 2.0 L engine models

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor system schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

» Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the driver information interface* or information display*. Follow the information of when to replace them.

➤ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 549

➤ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 557

➤ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 567

The temperature gauge pointer is at the **[H]** mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	546
Safety When Performing Maintenance	547
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service	548

Oil Monitor System*

Maintenance Schedule*

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ...	562
Opening the Bonnet	565
Recommended Engine Oil	567
Oil Check	569
Adding Engine Oil	572

Engine Coolant	573
Transmission Fluid	575
Brake/Clutch* Fluid	576
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	577
Fuel Filter	578

Replacing Light Bulbs

Checking and Maintaining Wiper

Blades

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres	597
Wear Indicators	598
Tyre Service Life	599
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	599

Tyre Rotation	600
Snow Traction Devices	601

Battery

Checking the Battery	603
Charging the Battery	604

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery	606
------------------------------------	-----

Climate Control System Maintenance

Dust and Pollen Filter	609
------------------------------	-----

Cleaning

Interior Care	611
Exterior Care	614

Accessories and Modifications

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

📖 **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 557

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch* fluid level monthly.
📖 **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 576
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
📖 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 597
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
📖 **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 579
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
📖 **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 592

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
 - Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function* is activated.

* Not available on all models

⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

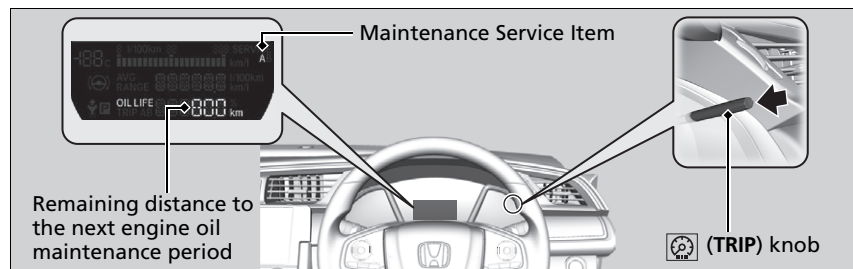
NOTICE


Do not press the engine cover* forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.


The oil monitor system indicator* or the warning message* notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Models with information display

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  (TRIP) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The oil monitor system indicator  stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.








The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:



- A. Replace engine oil
- B. Replace engine oil and oil filter

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

■ Oil Monitor System Information on the Information Display

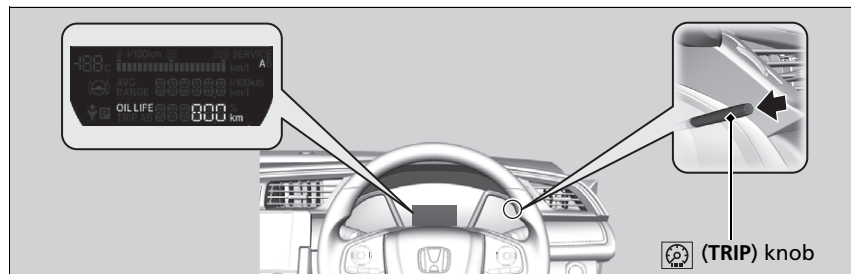
To switch the display, press the  (TRIP) knob.




Oil Monitor System Indicator	Information Display	Information
		When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change.
		When you select the oil monitor system information screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the remaining distance.
 <p>Starts to come on when you set the power mode to ON. It goes off when the  knob is pressed.</p>		The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.
		The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance service item should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.

Oil Monitor System Indicator	Information Display	Information
 <p>Stays on as a reminder until the oil monitor system is reset.</p>	 <p>Distance blinks</p>	<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance service item must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON and have the vehicle at a complete stop.
2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the  (TRIP) knob.
3. Press and hold the  knob for 10 seconds or more.
 - The display will blink to show it is in reset mode.
4. Press and hold the  knob until the display changes.
 - When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.

⌘ Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can cancel the resetting display in one of following ways during the oil monitor system information display blinks.

- Anything is not operated for 30 seconds
- Turn the engine off

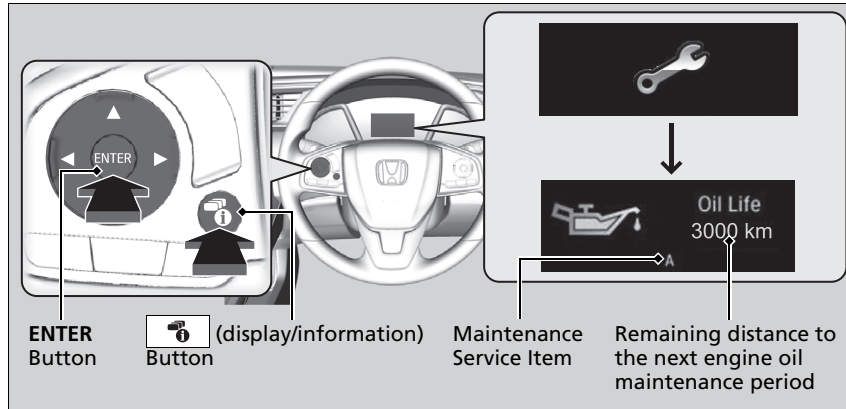
The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Models with driver information interface

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.

You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Press the (display/information) button several times until is displayed.
3. Press **ENTER** button to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The maintenance service item and the remaining distance appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.

The system message indicator () stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.


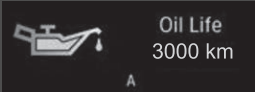



By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:







- A. Replace engine oil
- B. Replace engine oil and oil filter

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal —		When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change.
		When you select the oil monitor system information screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the remaining distance.
Service Due Soon  Service Due Soon *1 A  Maintenance Due Soon *2 A		The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.

*1:Except Vietnamese and Philippine models
*2:Vietnamese and Philippine models

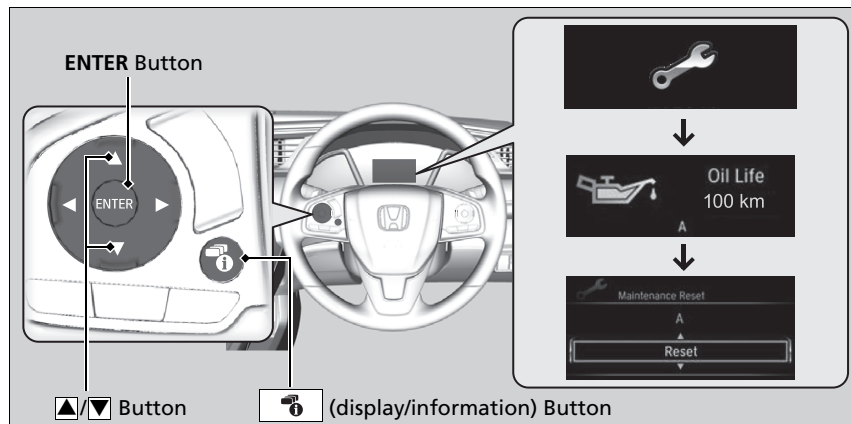
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>Service Due Now</p> <div>  Service Due Now *1 A </div> <div>  Maintenance Due Now *2 A </div>		<p>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance service item should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>
<p>Service Over Due</p> <div>  Service Over Due *1 A </div> <div>  Maintenance Past Due *2 A </div>		<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance service item must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

*1:Except Vietnamese and Philippine models

*2:Vietnamese and Philippine models

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1.
2. Press the (display/information) button several times until is displayed.
3. Press **ENTER** button to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press button to select **Reset**.
(You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶▶ Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 343

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* ¹	When indicator comes on or 1 year											
Replace engine oil filter* ¹	When indicator comes on or 2 years											
Add genuine injector cleaner agent* ²	Every 10,000 km or 1 year											
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km											
Inspect valve clearance	Every 120,000 km* ³											
Replace fuel filter* ⁴					•					•		
Replace spark plugs	Every 100,000 km											
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•			•
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years											
Replace transmission fluid	MT	Normal	Every 120,000 km or 6 years									
		Severe			•			•			•	
	CVT			•		•		•		•		•

*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to local warranty booklet.

*2: Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following countries, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details: Philippines, Vietnam, Indonesia, Macau

*3: Sensory Method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

*4: Refer to page 578 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter (If equipped)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)		Every year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots		Every 10,000 km or 6 months									
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid											
Exhaust system											
Fuel lines and connections											

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Transmission fluid	B, D

» Maintenance Schedule*

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
D. With a trailer towing*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

1.5 L engine models

Engine Oil Fill Cap

Brake Fluid
(Black Cap)

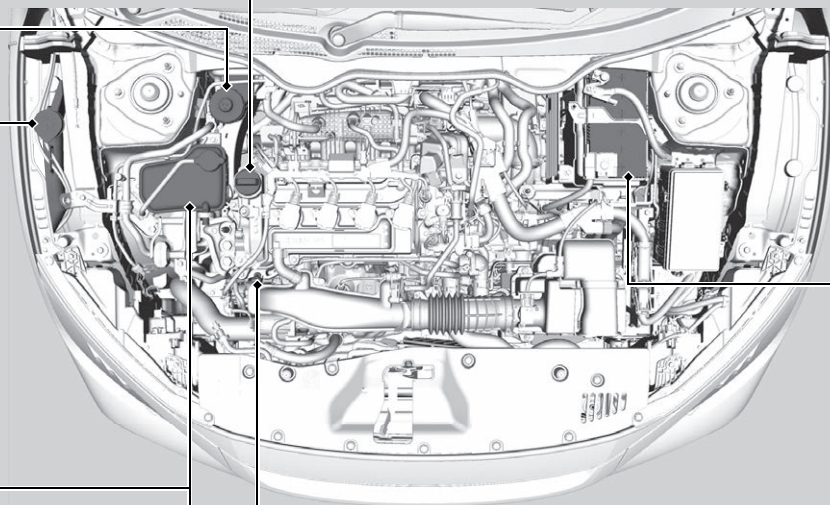
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)

Battery

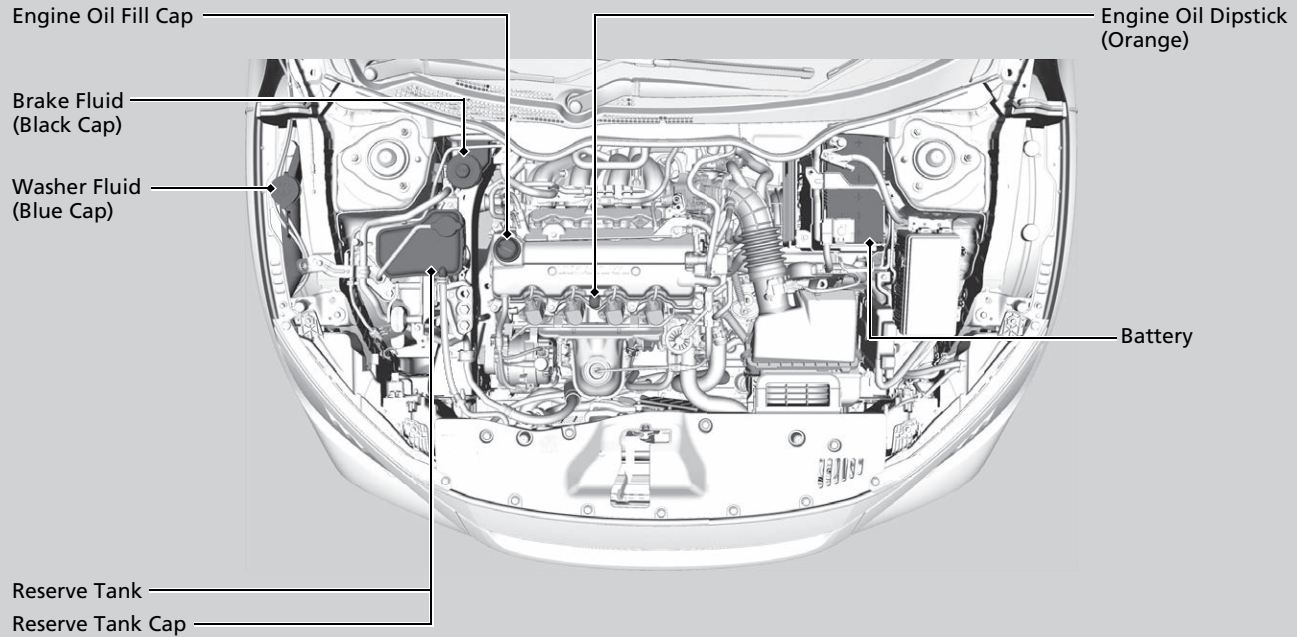
Reserve Tank

Reserve Tank Cap

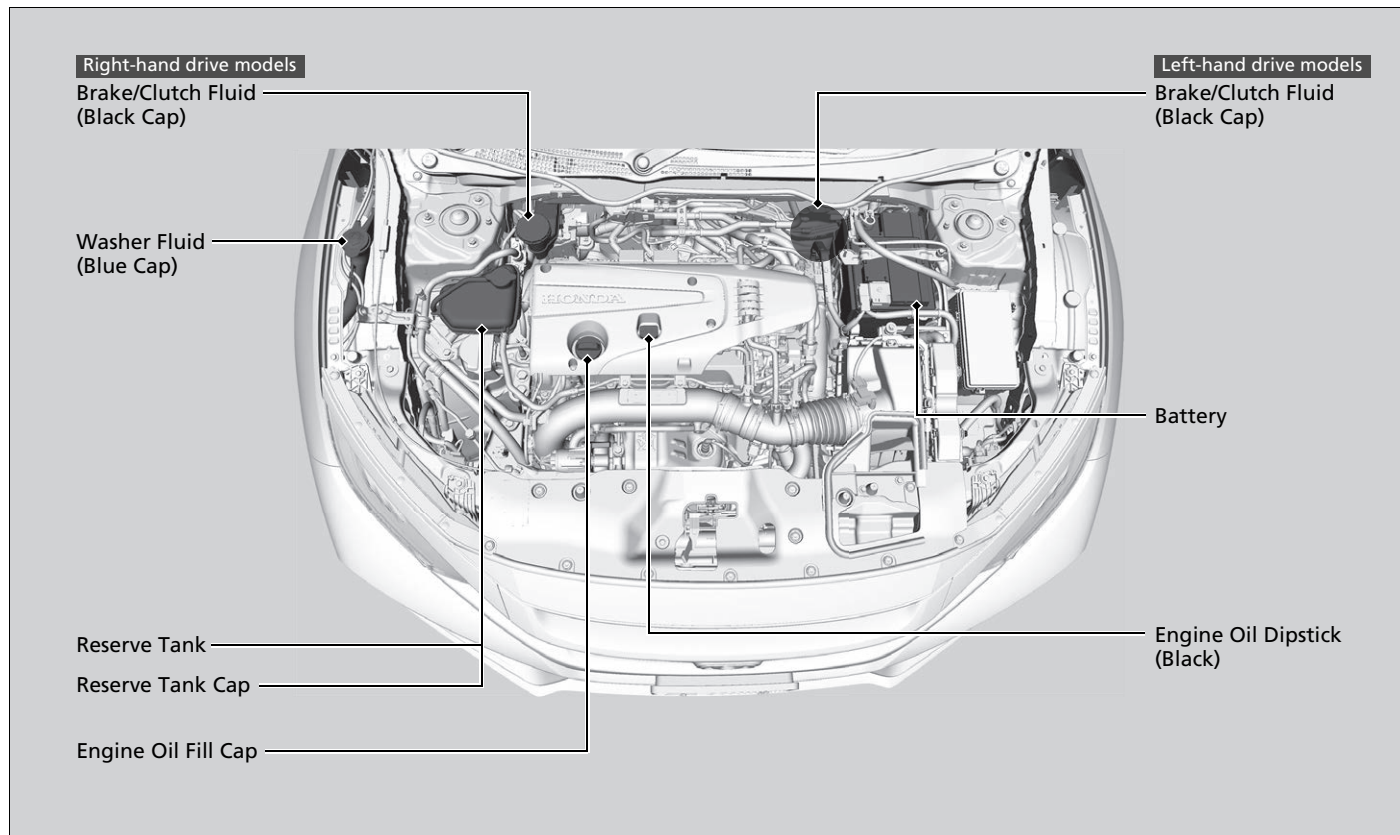
Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)



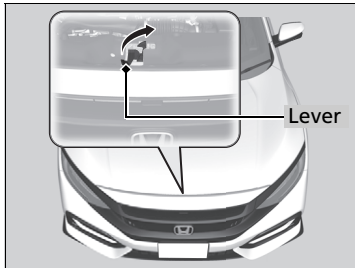
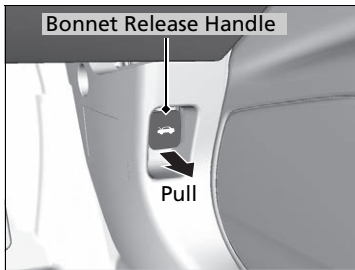
1.8 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

NOTICE

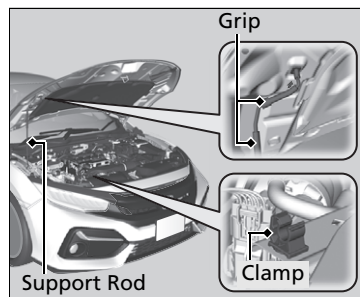
Do not press the engine cover* forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function* is activated.

* Not available on all models



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

► Opening the Bonnet

Oceanian 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models



2.0 L engine models except Thailand and Indonesian



Oceanian 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

2.0 L engine models except Thailand and Indonesian

- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter*.

➤ **Adding Engine Oil** P. 572

» Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives


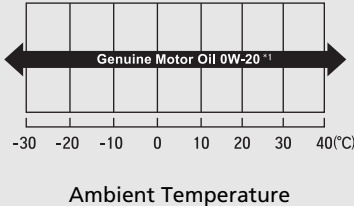
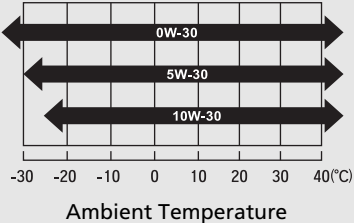

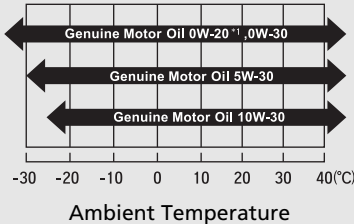
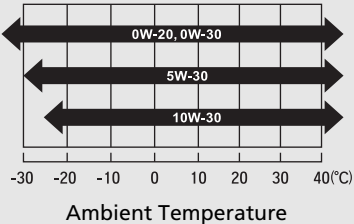
Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

* Not available on all models

Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ACEA C2/C3 
Without Gasoline Particulate Filter		<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil• ACEA A5/B5 

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

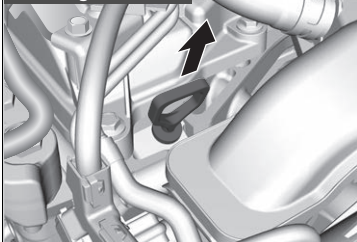
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

Oil Check

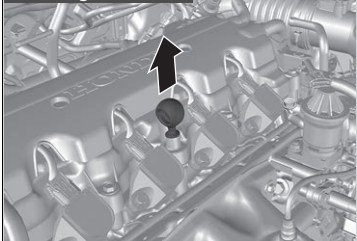
If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Continued

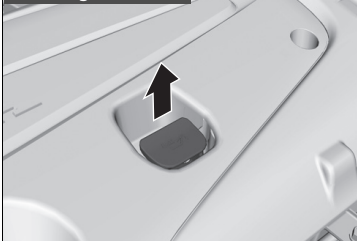
1.5 L engine models



1.8 L engine models

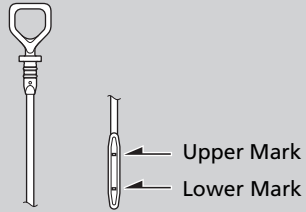


2.0 L engine models



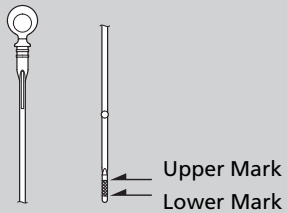
1. Remove the dipstick (orange or black).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

1.5 L engine models

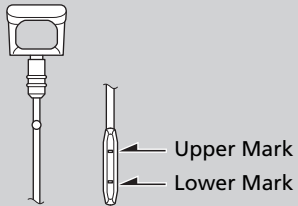


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

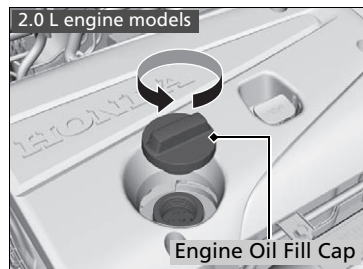
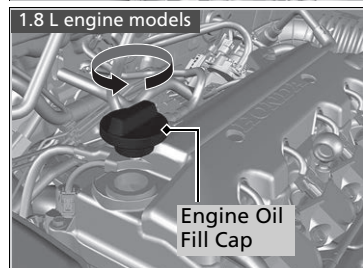
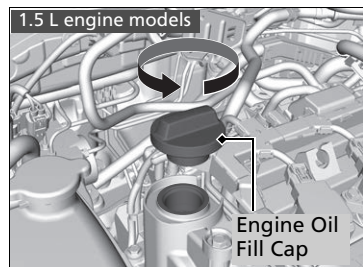
1.8 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

►► Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

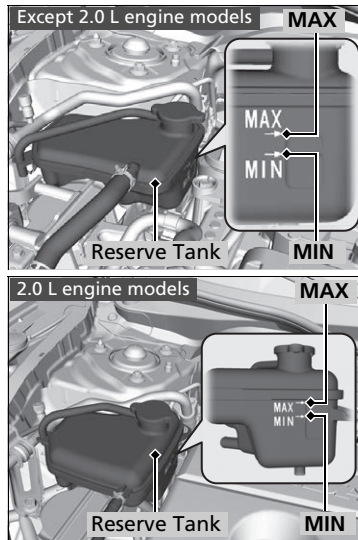
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
► If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

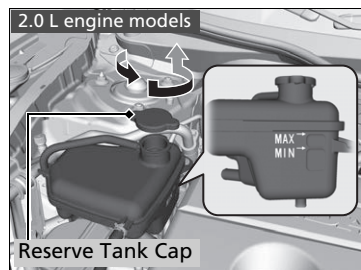
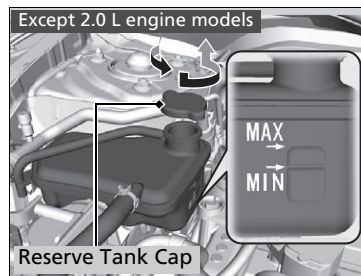
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Adding the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

►► Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously variable transmission models

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 557

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Manual transmission models

Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda MTF

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

🔧 **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 557

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Manual Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

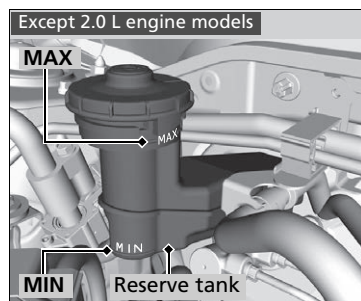
* Not available on all models

Brake/Clutch * Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch*.

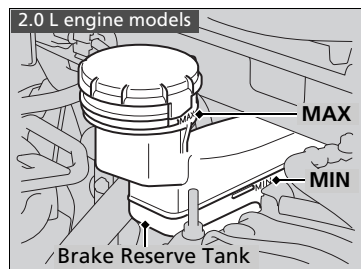
Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.



Brake/Clutch * Fluid

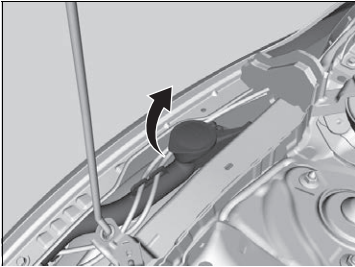
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Open the cap and check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Vietnamese models

If the washer fluid is low, a symbol appears on the driver information interface.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

Australian and New Zealand models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km, or 3 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*

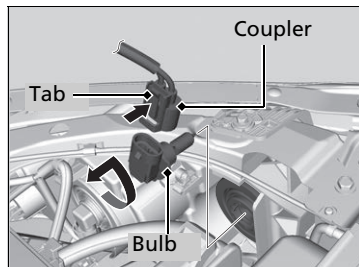
High beam headlight: LED type*

Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*

Low beam headlight: LED type*

High Beam Headlight

Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.

Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

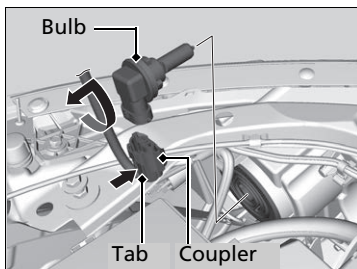
Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

■ Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



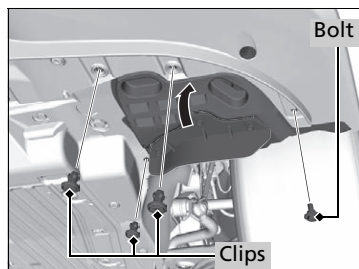
1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Front Fog Light Bulbs*

Models with halogen fog lights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)



1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, remove the bolt, and push up the under cover.

Front Fog Light Bulbs*

NOTICE

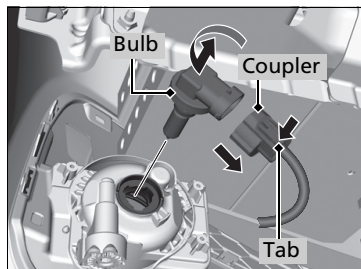
Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED fog lights

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

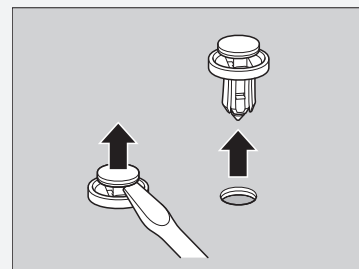
* Not available on all models



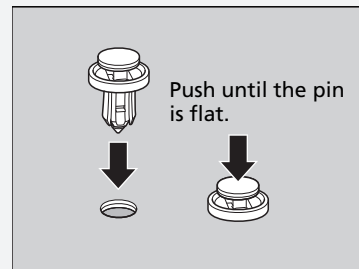
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Front Fog Light Bulbs*

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.

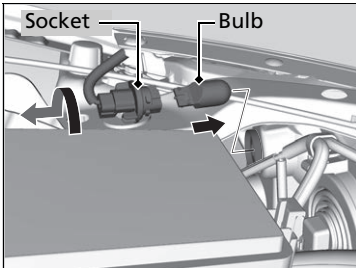


Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Models with LED headlights

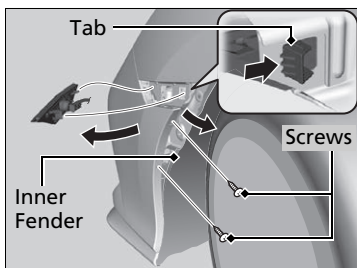
Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Marker Light Bulbs*

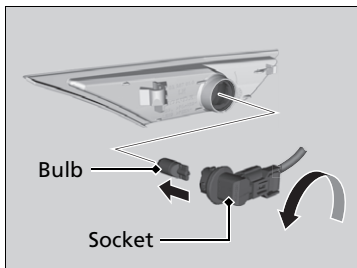
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Side Marker Light: 5 W (Amber)

Except 2.0 L engine models

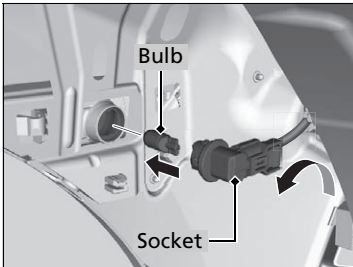
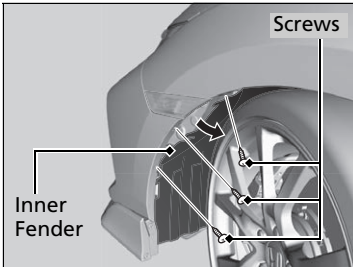


1. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
2. Push the tab to remove the light assembly.



3. Turn the socket anticlockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

2.0 L engine models



1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the light being replaced.
Right side: Turn the steering wheel anticlockwise.
Left side: Turn the steering wheel clockwise.
2. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Turn the socket anticlockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror type

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light: LED type

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Fender type

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light: 5 W (Amber)

Side turn signal lights bulbs and front side marker light bulbs are the same.

➡ **Side Marker Light Bulbs** * P. 584

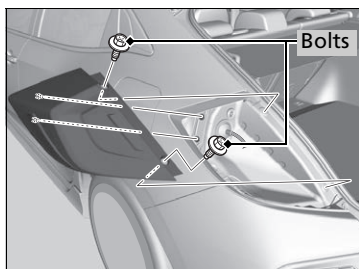
Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

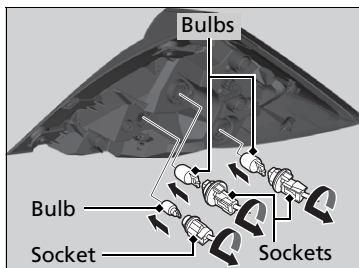
Brake Light: 21 W

Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)

Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Use a Phillips head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.
6. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

Taillights and Rear Fog Light*

Taillights and rear fog light are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillights

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

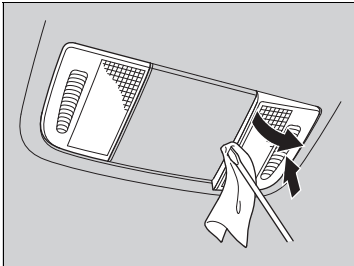
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

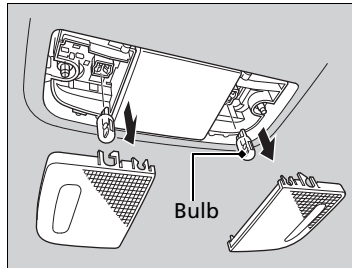
Map Light Bulbs

Models with sunroof switch or ambient light
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

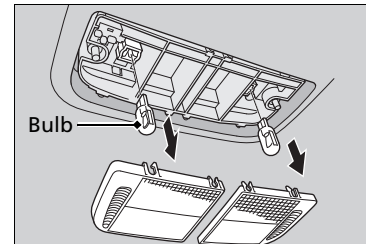
Models without sunroof switch or ambient light

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

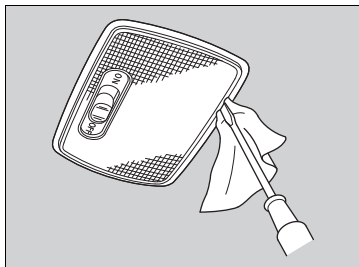


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

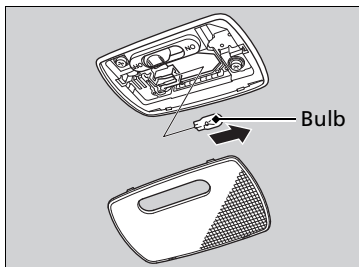
■ Ceiling Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

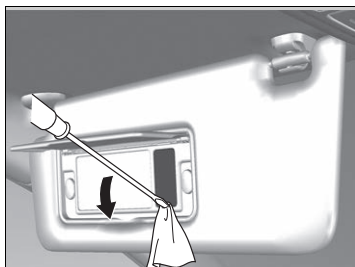


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

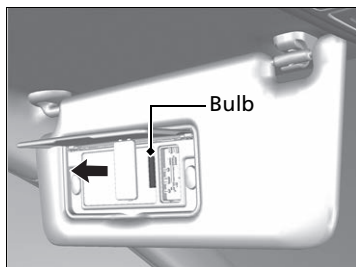
■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror: 2 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

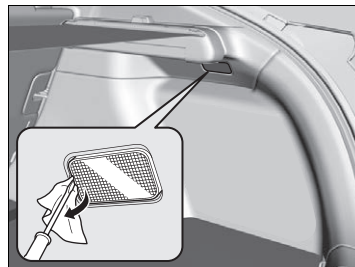


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

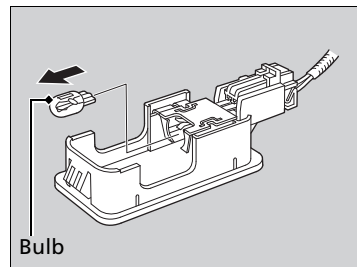
■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

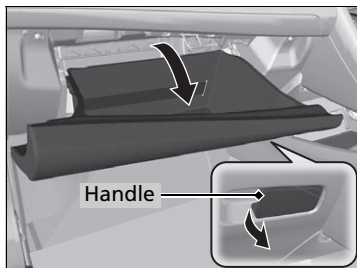


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

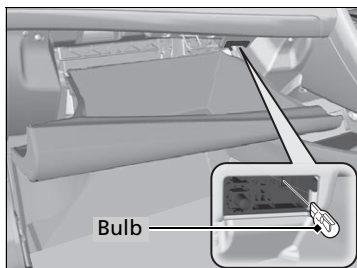
■ Glove Box Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Glove Box Light: 3.4 W



1. Open the glove box.



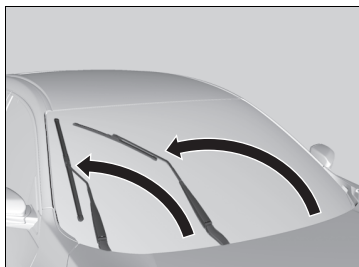
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

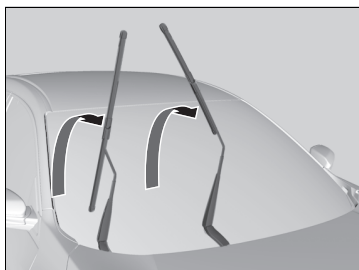
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]***1.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]***1, then to LOCK **[0]***1.
 - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.



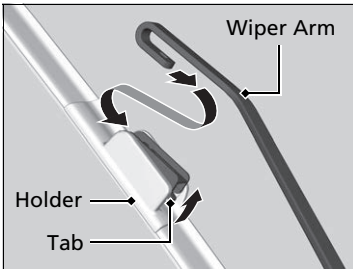
3. Lift both wiper arms.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

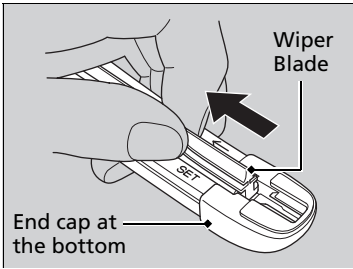
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

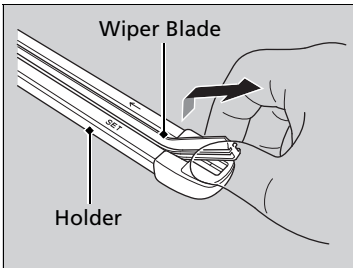
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



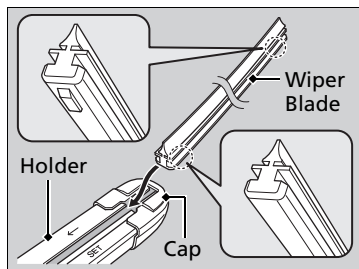
4. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.




5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



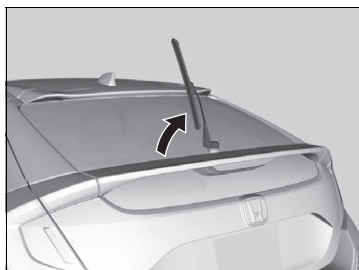
6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



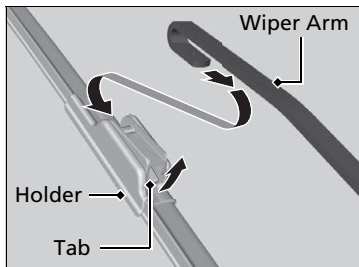
7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Turn the ignition switch to ON *1 and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

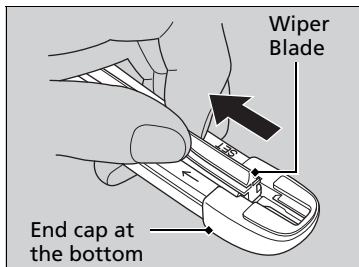
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.



2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



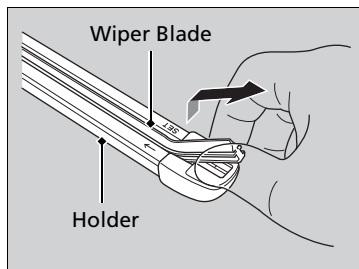
3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

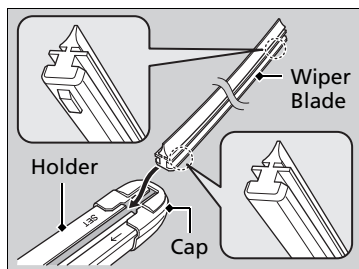
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

Continued



4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of holder.



5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the wiper arm.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 kgf/cm², 0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 598

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

⌘ Checking Tyres

⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm², 0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➤ **Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine**

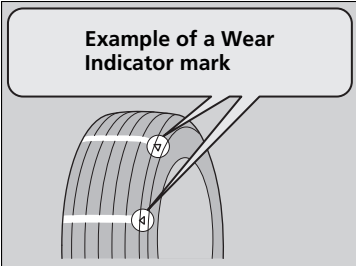
➤ **Deflation Warning System** P. 450

➤ **Oceanian, Indonesian, and Vietnamese models with 2.0 L engine**

➤ **Deflation Warning System** P. 453

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

►► Checking Tyres

High speed driving

1.5 L engine models

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	215/50R17 91V
Pressure	Front: 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm ² , 35 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm ² , 33 psi)

2.0 L engine models

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 220 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size 245/30ZR20 90Y	
Number of occupants	Pressure
1	Front: 280 kPa (2.8 bar, 41 psi)
2	Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)
3	Front: 290 kPa (2.9 bar, 42 psi)
4	Rear: 250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

►► Checking Tyres

Models with FORGED engraved on the wheel

This vehicle is equipped with high grip tyres. Due to their focus on dry-grip performance, these tyres have shallower tread grooves and wear faster than ordinary commercial tyres. Periodically check the tread depth. Drive at a safe speed in the rain and on wet roads.

►► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

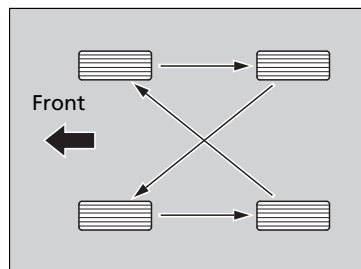
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Tyre Rotation

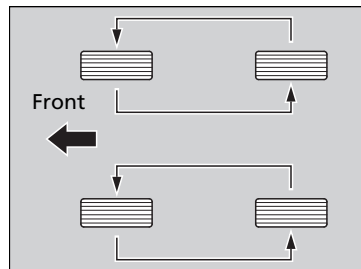
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

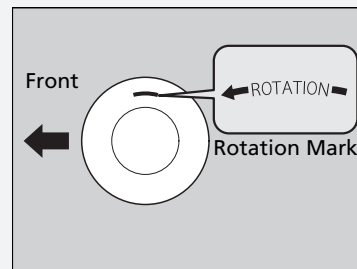
■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

► Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

Oceanian models with 1.5 L and 1.8 L engine

► **Deflation Warning System** P. 450

Oceanian, Indonesian, and Vietnamese models with 2.0 L engine

► **Deflation Warning System** P. 453

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

❧ Snow Traction Devices

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Except 2.0 L engine models

Australian, New Zealand models

Original Tyre Size* ¹	Chain Type
235/40ZR18 95Y*²	(Not Available)
215/55R16 93H	RUD-matic classic 48489
215/50R17 91V	

2.0 L engine models

Australian and New Zealand models

Original Tyre Size* ¹	Chain Type
245/30ZR20 90Y*³	(Not Available)
235/40R18 95Y	SCC Auto Truck 0154705

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2: You cannot mount chains on this tyre. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the tyres with the original 215/50R17 size tyres.

*3: You cannot mount chains on this tyre. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the tyres with the original 235/40R18 size tyres.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

► Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

2.0 L engine models

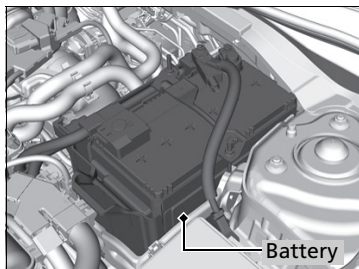
This vehicle is originally equipped with high grip tyres*¹ or high performance tyres*². If exposed to temperatures below approximately 7°C, the tyres will not be able to perform at their full potential.

Do not use the high performance tyres if ambient temperatures are below -10°C*¹ or -20°C*²: The tyres can become brittle and, as a result, may suffer from surface cracking.

*1: Models with FORGED engraved on the wheel

*2: Models without FORGED engraved on the wheel

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the information display*/driver information interface* will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
➤ **Clock*** P. 182

Battery

⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

» Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.


When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

Vietnamese models

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

» Specifications P. 684

» Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)*, road departure mitigation*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system*, deflation warning system* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1} after reconnecting the battery.

Drive a short distance at 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Replacing the Button Battery

⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

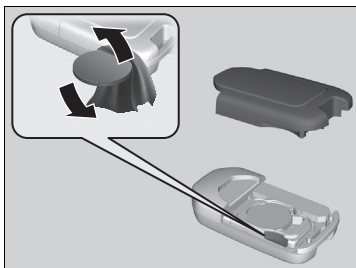
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

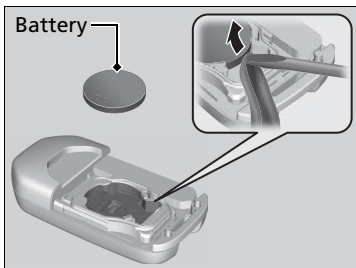
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

■ Retractable Key*



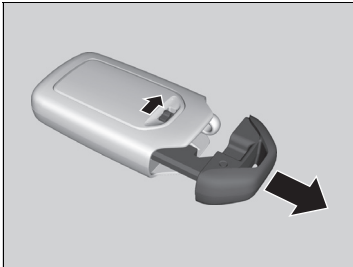
Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.



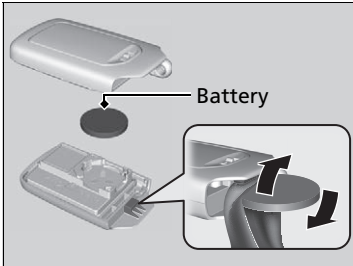
2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

■ Keyless Remote *



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
 - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



* Not available on all models

Vietnamese models

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

» Air Conditioning

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:



⚠ : Caution

🔥 : Flammable Refrigerant

👤 : Requires a qualified technician to service

⚙ : Air Conditioning System

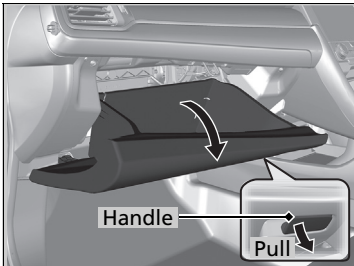
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

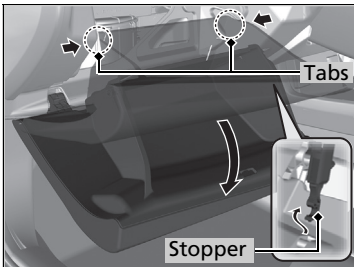
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

✎ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 557

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



Models with glove box damper

2. Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.

All models

3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

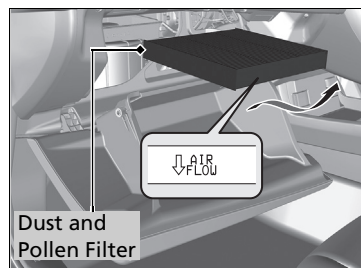
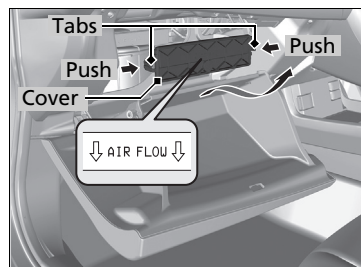
✎ Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

* Not available on all models



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

► Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

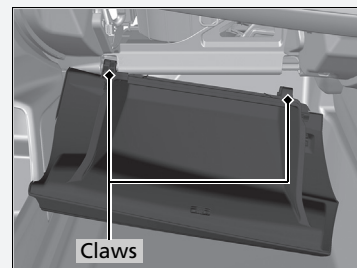
►► Dust and Pollen Filter

Models with glove box damper

Installing the dust and pollen filter:

1. Install the filter case cover.
2. Remove the driver's side claw at the bottom of the glove box.
3. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.
4. Open the glove box to angle of about 30 °.
5. Install the hook portion of the stopper to the glove box.
When installing the stopper, put a hand from the bottom of the glove box.
6. Install the claw at bottom of the glove box.

After installing the glove box, open and close several times and make sure the glove box is installed properly.



Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

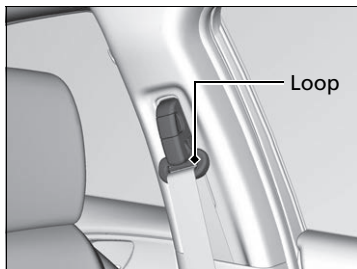
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



▣ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

▣ Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera* and the rainfall/light sensor*.

▣ **Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)*** P. 220

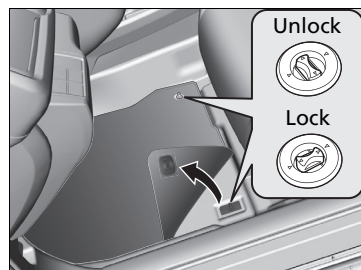
▣ **Automatic Intermittent Wipers*** P. 229

▣ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 516

▣ Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

■ Floor Mats*



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

■ Alcantara® Care*

After having dusted the material, moisten a soft cloth with clean lukewarm water, wring it dry and blot gently to remove any dirt.

Once dry, lightly brush with a soft brush.

►► Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

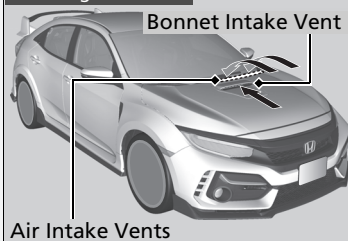
✎ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake and bonnet intake* vents. It can cause a malfunction.

Except 2.0 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

2.0 L engine models

Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels*

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

* Not available on all models

Continued

» Washing the Vehicle

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

➤ **Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber**
P. 592

» Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

» Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses


The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
 **Fuses** P. 664
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools	
Types of Tools.....	620
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Changing a Flat Tyre*	621
Engine Does Not Start	
Checking the Engine	644
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak....	646
Emergency Engine Stop	647
If the Battery Is Dead	648
Shift Lever Does Not Move	652
Overheating	653

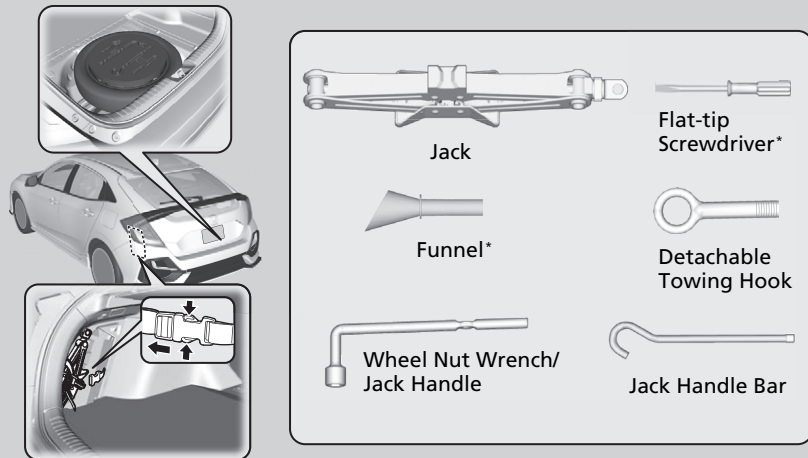
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking	
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On	656
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On	656
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks	657
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks	658
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on	659

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On.....	660
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks ..	661
If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks	662
Fuses	664
Emergency Towing	676
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door ..	679
If You Cannot Open the Hatch	680
Refueling*	681

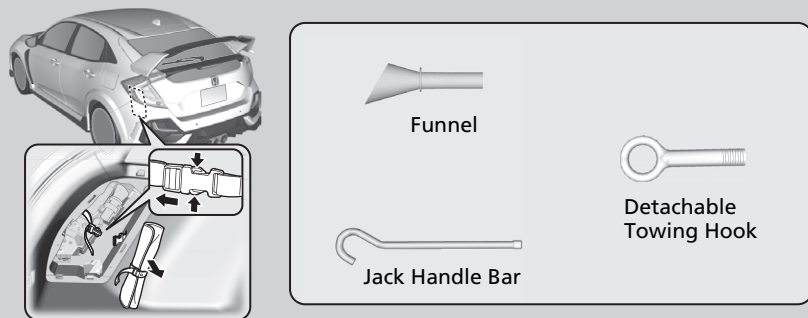
* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

Models with compact spare tyre



Models with temporary tyre repair kit



Types of Tools

The tools were stored in the luggage area.

Changing a Flat Tyre*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Put the transmission into **P**.

Manual transmission models

2. Put the transmission into **R**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

* Not available on all models

Changing a Flat Tyre*

Follow compact spare precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm², 60 psi)*420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)*

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

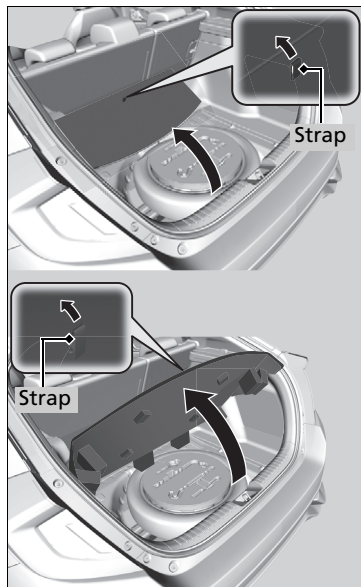
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

Do not use the compact spare tyre if you are towing a trailer*.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.

▣ Changing a Flat Tyre*

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

▣ Changing a Flat Tyre*

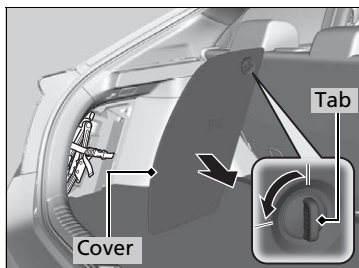
WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

NOTICE

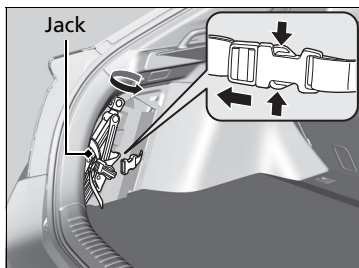
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

The shape of the tool case varies by model.

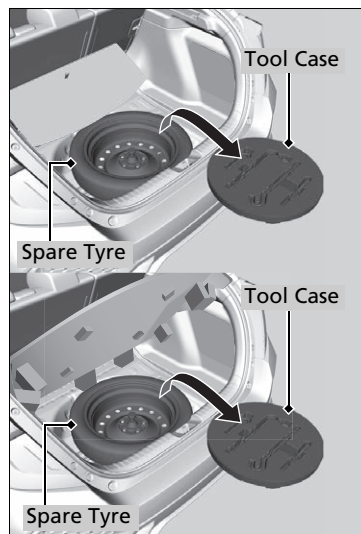
The subwoofer* is located on the rear right side. Do not store anything in this area. Doing so may compromise vehicle audio performance.



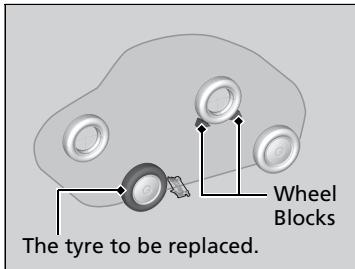
2. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the luggage area.



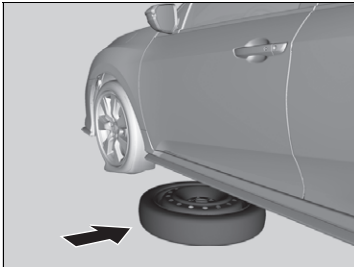
3. Turn the jack's end bracket to loosen it, then remove it.



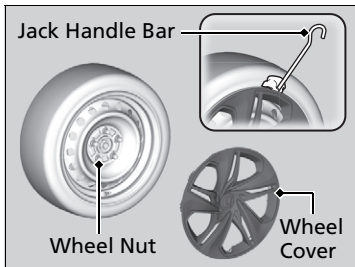
4. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
5. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



7. Place the compact spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



Models with wheel cover

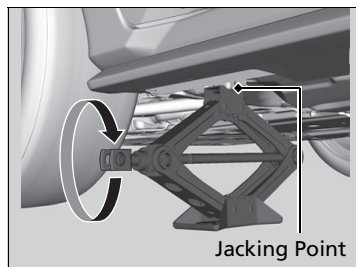
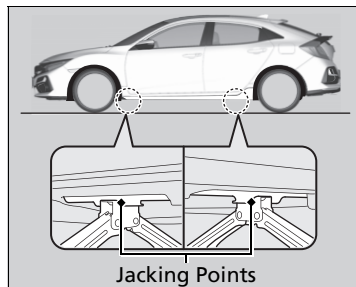
8. Put the flat tip of the jack handle bar into the edge of the wheel cover. Carefully pry the edge and remove the cover.
- Wrap a cloth around the flat tip of the jack handle bar to prevent scratches on the cover.



All models

9. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

► Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

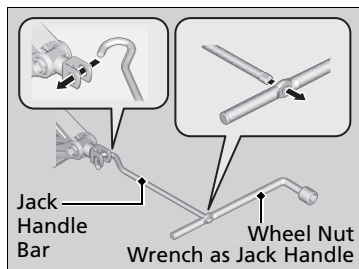
WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Oceanian models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

► How to Set Up the Jack

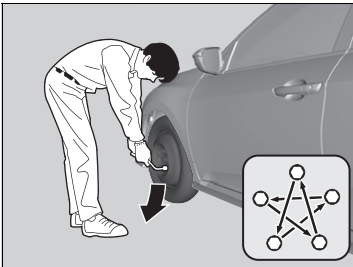
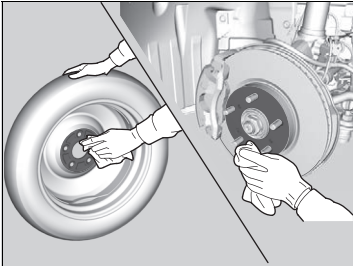
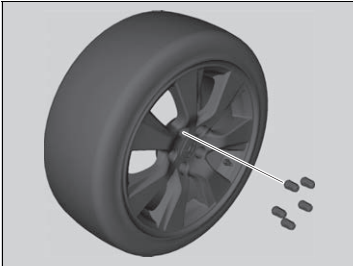
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.

2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the compact spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

Wheel nut torque:

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

2.0 L engine models

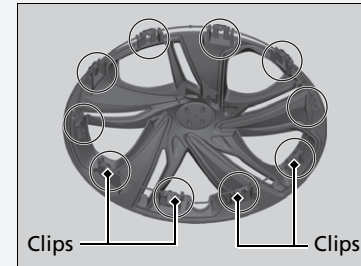
127 N·m (13 kgf·m, 94 lbf·ft)

Replacing the Flat Tyre

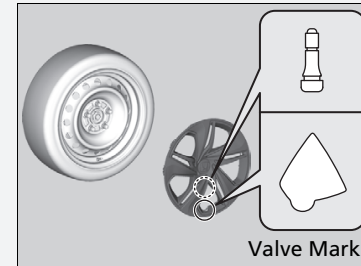
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Models with wheel cover

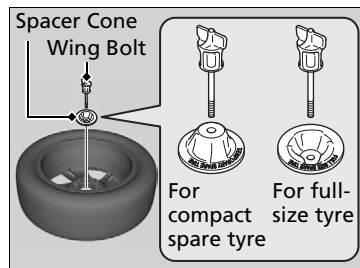
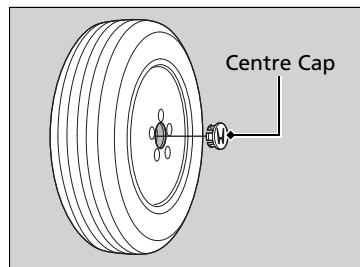
Make sure the wire support ring is hooked into the clips around the edge of the wheel cover.



Align the valve mark on the wheel cover to the tyre valve on the wheel, then install the wheel cover.



■ Storing the Flat Tyre



Models with aluminium wheels

1. Remove the centre cap.

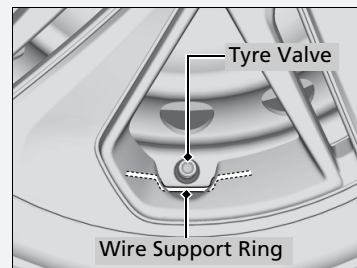
All models

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Store the jack in the compartment on the left side. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.
5. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the luggage area.

►► Replacing the Flat Tyre

Models with wheel cover

Make sure the wire support ring is on the outer side of the tyre valve as shown.




►► Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre *

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the  appears on the driver information interface and the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Initialise the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

📖 **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 450

* Not available on all models

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.


If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **[R]**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

►► Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre*

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

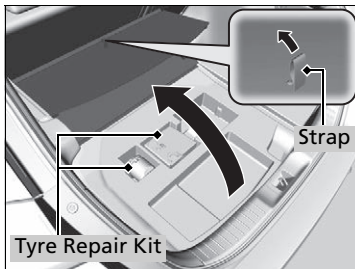
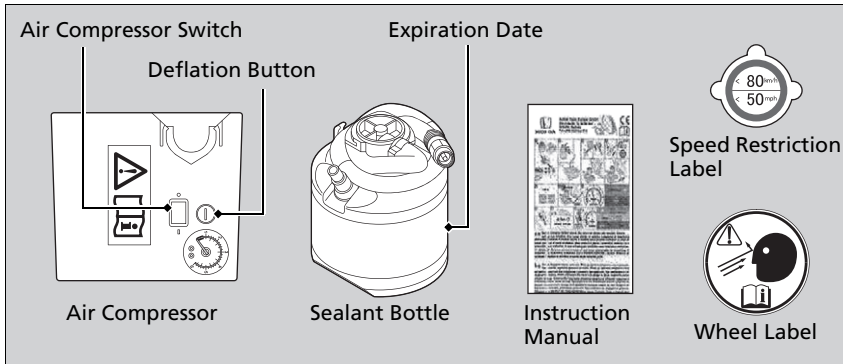
- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

	When the puncture is:	Kit Use
	Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
	Larger than 4 mm	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

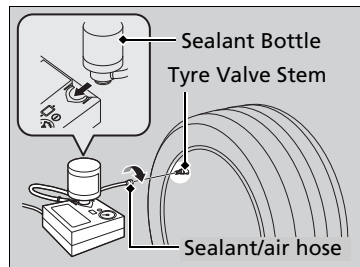
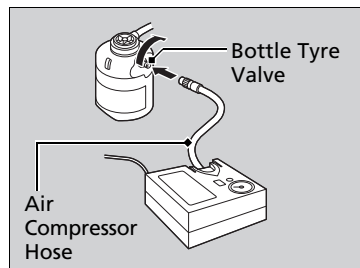
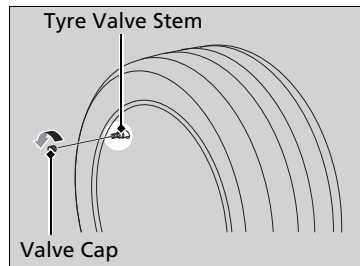


1. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit out of the tool case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

►► Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

►► Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

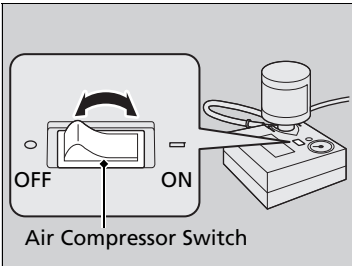
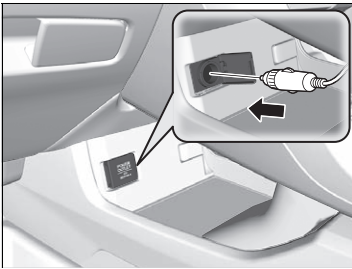
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

► Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

✚ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 258

7. Start the engine.

► Keep the engine running while injecting sealant and air.

✚ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101

8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.

► The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.

9. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.

► Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.

► Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

✚ Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

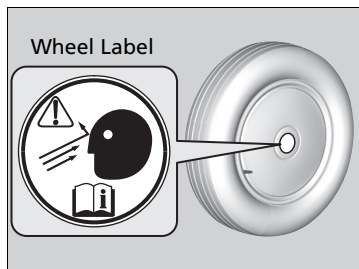
NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

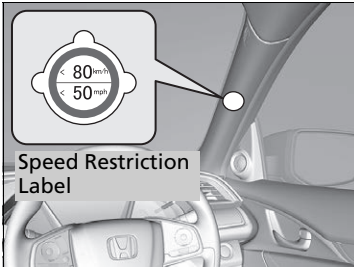
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

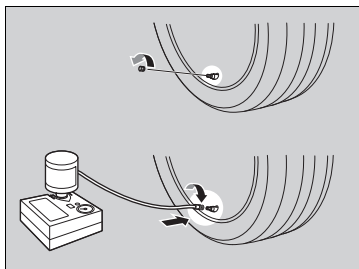


- 10.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- 11.** Unscrew the sealant hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 12.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
 - Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.

► Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

✚ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

P. 640

5. If the air pressure is:

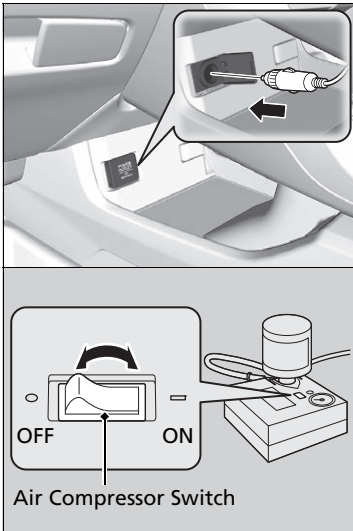
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

✚ Emergency Towing P. 676

Front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi) or more:

Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.
Do not exceed 80 km/h.

- If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.



- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than: front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/ rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches: front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi).

► **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 640

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.

► You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

6. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
7. Unscrew the air only hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
8. Press the pressure relief button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
9. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

► Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

⚠ WARNING

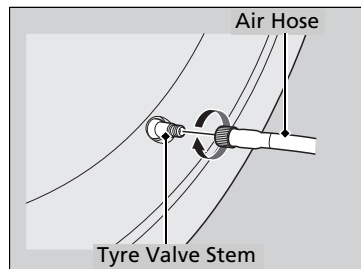
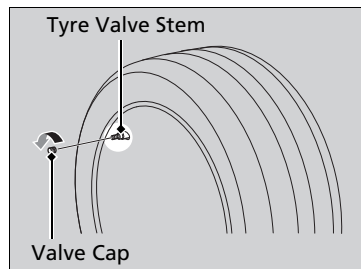
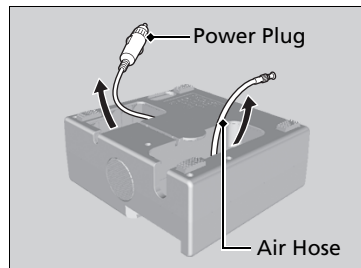
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.
✎ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 633
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.
4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem.
 Screw it until it is tight.

►► Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

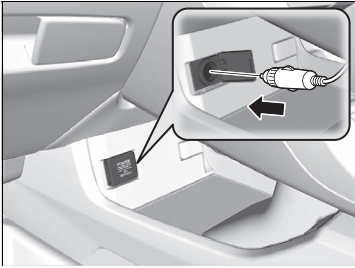
⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

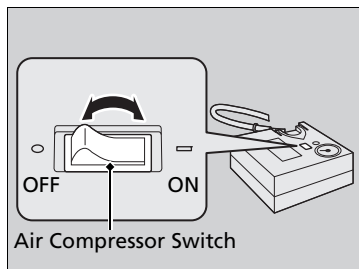
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



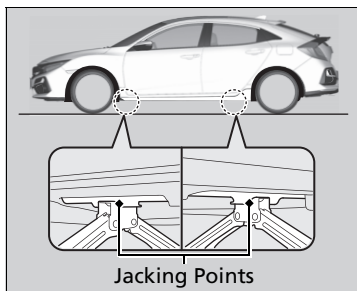
6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
 - ❏ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 258
7. Start the engine.
 - Keep the engine running while injecting air.
 - ❏ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101



8. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
9. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
10. Turn off the kit.
 - Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - If overinflated, press the deflate button.
11. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
12. Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
13. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Handling of the Jack

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

⌕Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ If the Battery Is Dead P. 648

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button* for more than 15 seconds.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<div>Models with keyless access system</div> <div>Check for a message on the driver information interface*.<ul style="list-style-type: none">If the To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button message appear<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 646▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range P. 213</div> <div>Check the brightness of the interior lights. Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.<ul style="list-style-type: none">If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all<ul style="list-style-type: none">➡ Battery P. 603If the interior lights come on normally ➡ Fuses P. 664</div>

Starter condition	Checklist
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	Review the engine start procedure.
	Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➤ Starting the Engine P. 401, 404
	Check the immobilizer system indicator.
	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.
	➤ Immobilizer System P. 204
	Check the fuel level.
	There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ Fuel Gauge P. 164
	Check the fuse.
	Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	➤ Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 675
	If the problem continues:
	➤ Emergency Towing P. 676

Model with keyless access system

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

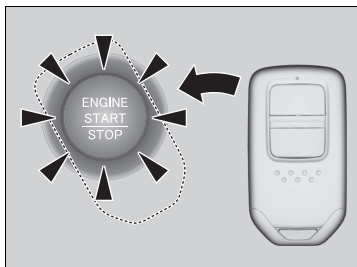
If the beeper sounds, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Models with driver information interface

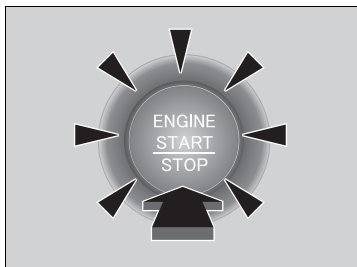
The **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface.

All models

Start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
► The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
► If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Model with keyless access system

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

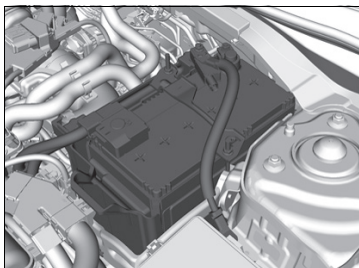
Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

■ Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the fuse box cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
 - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

⌘ If the Battery Is Dead

⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

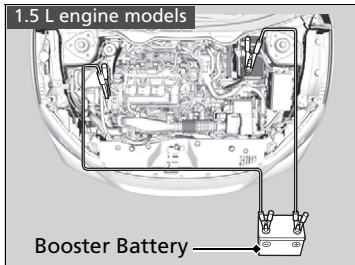
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

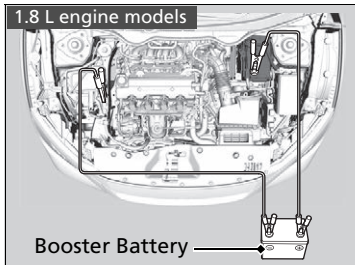
If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

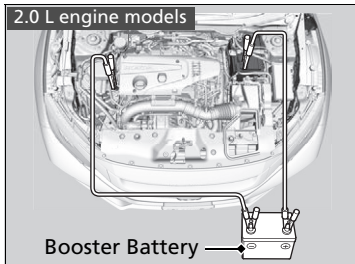
1.5 L engine models



1.8 L engine models



2.0 L engine models

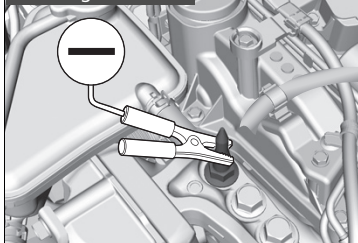


4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.

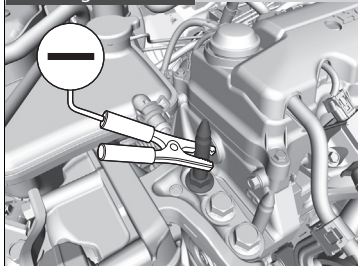
▶▶ If the Battery Is Dead

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

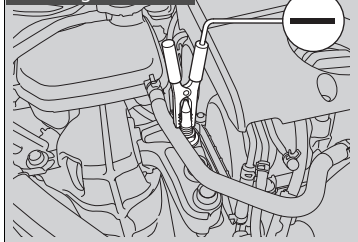
1.5 L engine models



1.8 L engine models



2.0 L engine models



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your jumper cable is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.


■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

⚠ If the Battery Is Dead

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, deflation warning system*, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system* and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON ^{*1} after reconnecting a battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

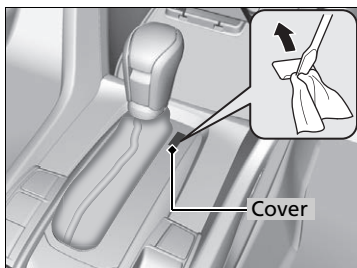
* Not available on all models

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

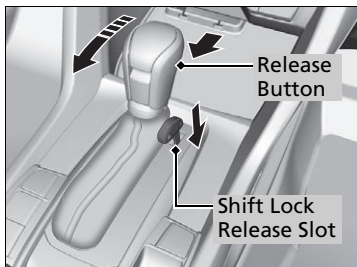
All models

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover of the shift lock release slot. Put the tip of the flat-tip screwdriver into the slot and remove it as shown in the image.

4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.

Models with driver information interface

- The **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray is comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
 - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

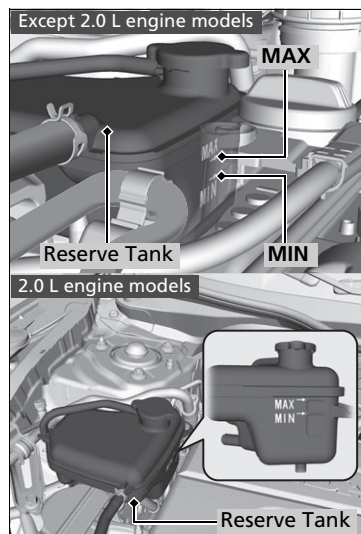
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the **H** mark may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



Models with information display

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature gauge pointer comes down.

Models with driver information interface

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface goes off.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

All models

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

►► How to Handle Overheating

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

➤ **Oil Check** P. 569

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

- ▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
- ▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

❧ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

❧ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

⌘ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

► If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

P. 659

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.

It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)



(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 519

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

► Preventing the vehicle from moving.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into **P**.

Manual transmission models

Put the transmission into **1** or **R**.

- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

⌘ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and the Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Vietnamese models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stay on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 454

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

►► If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Oceanian models

Indonesian models with 2.0 L engine

If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator to come on/blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stay on.

■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 450

■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre* causes the indicator to first blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

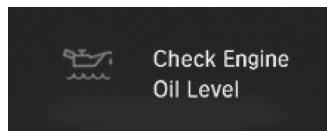
►► If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Vietnamese models

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



■ Reasons for the symbol to appear

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

■ What to do as soon as the symbol appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
 - Add oil as necessary.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 569

🔧 If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***¹ and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

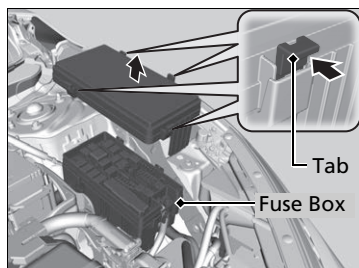
■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Models with fuse label

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.















Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

















Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.



*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	 OP Block1*	(60 A)
	 –	(30 A)
	 Cooling Fan* ^{1, *2}	30 A* ^{1, *3}
	 Main Fan* ³	50 A* ²
	 Audio Amp*	(30 A)
	 IG Main2*	(30 A)
	 Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	 Battery	100 A* ¹ 125 A* ^{2, *3}
	 EPS	70 A
	 IG Main1	30 A* ⁴ 50 A* ⁵
2	 Fuse Box Option*	(40 A)
	 Fuse Box Main	60 A
	 Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	 Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	 Rear Demister	40 A
	 Starter Motor*	(30 A)
	 Fuse Box Main2	40 A
	 ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	 ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	 Blower Motor	40 A
	 –	(40 A)
4	 –	(40 A)
	 –	(40 A)
	 –	(40 A)
5	 Cooling Fan* ^{1, *2}	(5 A)
6	 Washer	15 A
7	 IGP	15 A* ^{1, *2} 20 A* ³
8	 Stop Lights	10 A
9	 DBW/FI Sub	15 A
10	 Injector* ² Sub Fan* ³	(15 A)* ^{1, *2} (20 A)* ³

	Circuit Protected	Amps
11	 LAF	(5 A)* ^{1, *3} 5 A* ²
12	 –	(10 A)* ¹ 10 A* ^{2, *3}
13	 Hazard	15 A
14	 –	(15 A)
15	 IG Coil	15 A
16	 Transmission	(15 A)
17	 Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
18	 Back Up	10 A
19	 Audio	(15 A)
20	 Position Lights	10 A
21	 Interior Lights	10 A










*1: 1.8 L engine models






*2: 1.5 L engine models

*3: 2.0 L engine models

*4: Models with keyless access system

*5: Models without keyless access system

	Circuit Protected	Amps
22	 Fog Lights*	(15 A)
23	 A/C Compressor	10 A
24	 Horn	10 A
25	 —	(10 A)
	*1, *3, *4	*1, *3, *4
	—*5	—*5
26	 Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27	 Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
		(5 A)
28	 —	*1, *3, *4
	—	—*5
29	 Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	 Right Headlight High Beam	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	—*1	—*1
31	 Passenger's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
	 ADS*3, *5	(15A)*3, *5
	—*1, *3	—*1, *3
32	 Passenger's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
	 —*5	(30 A)*5
33	 VB ACT*2	(5 A)

*1: 1.8 L engine models

*2: 1.5 L engine models

*3: 2.0 L engine models

*4: 1.5 L engine models with keyless access system

*5: 1.5 L engine models without keyless access system

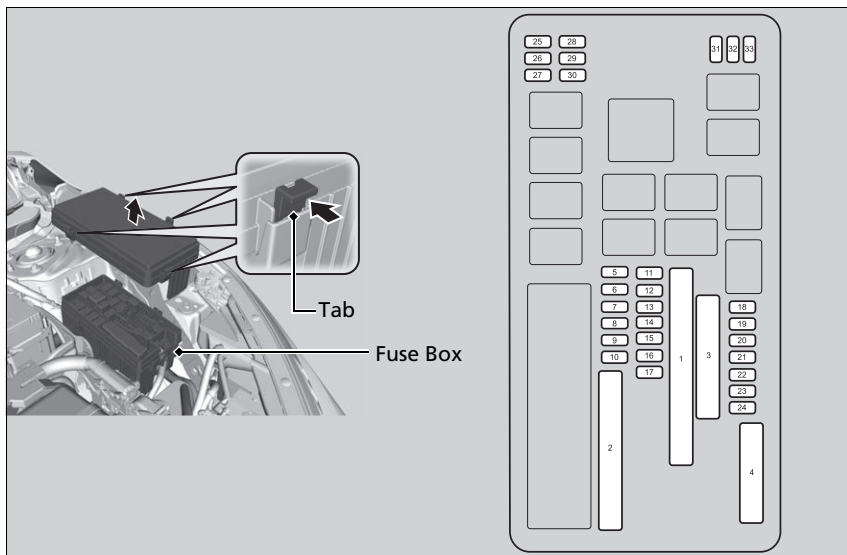
■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Models without fuse label

Located near battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	OP Block1	60 A
	VST1 (Idle Stop)	30 A
	Main Fan	30 A
	–	–
	IG Main2	30 A
	Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	Battery (Main Fuse)	125 A
	EPS	70 A
2	IG Main1	30 A
	–	–
	Fuse Box Main	60 A
	Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
3	Rear Demister	40 A
	Starter Motor	30 A
	Fuse Box	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	Blower Motor	40 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
4	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
5	–	–
6	Washer	15 A
7	IGP	20 A
8	Stop Lights	10 A
9	FI Sub	15 A
10	Sub Fan	20 A
11	LAF	5 A
12	FI ECU	10 A
13	Hazard	15 A
14	–	–
15	IG Coil	15 A
16	–	–
17	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
18	Back Up	10 A
19	–	–
20	Position Lights	10 A

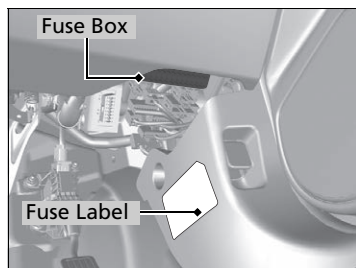
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Interior Lights	10 A
22	Fog Lights	15 A
23	A/C Compressor	10 A
24	Horn	10 A
25	Audio	30 A
26	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28	–	–
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
31	ADS	15 A
32	Headlight Washer	30 A
33	–	–

Interior Fuse Box

Models with fuse label

Fuse Box A

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	10 A
2		Key Lock	(5 A)
3		Rear Wiper Motor	(10 A)
4		Option 3* ⁶	(5 A)
		Transmission* ²	(10 A)
5		Option	(10 A)
6		–	(10 A)
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A* ³ , * ⁴ 20 A* ⁵
9		AIRCON	10 A
10		Rear Accessory Power Socket*	(20 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
11		Monitor* ³	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
14		Rear Left Side Power Window	(20 A)
15		Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission* ⁶	(10 A)
		Option 3* ²	(5 A)
18		–	(10 A)
19		Sunroof*	(20 A)
20		–	(10 A)

*1: Models with keyless access system











*2: 1.5 L or 1.8 L engine models without keyless access system









*3: 1.5 L engine models

*4: 1.8 L engine models

*5: 2.0 L engine models

*6: 1.5 L or 1.8 L engine models with keyless access system

		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
23		Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
24		Option*	(5 A)
25		—	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27		Rear Right Side Power Window	(20 A)
28		Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30		Smart* ¹ STS* ²	(10 A) (5 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
31		Driver's Power Seat Reclining*	(20 A)
32		Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33		Driver's Power Seat Sliding*	(20 A)
34		VSA/ABS	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36	—	—	—
37		—	(10 A)
38		Left Side Rear Door Lock	10 A
39		—	(10 A)

*1: Models with keyless access system

*2: Models without keyless access system

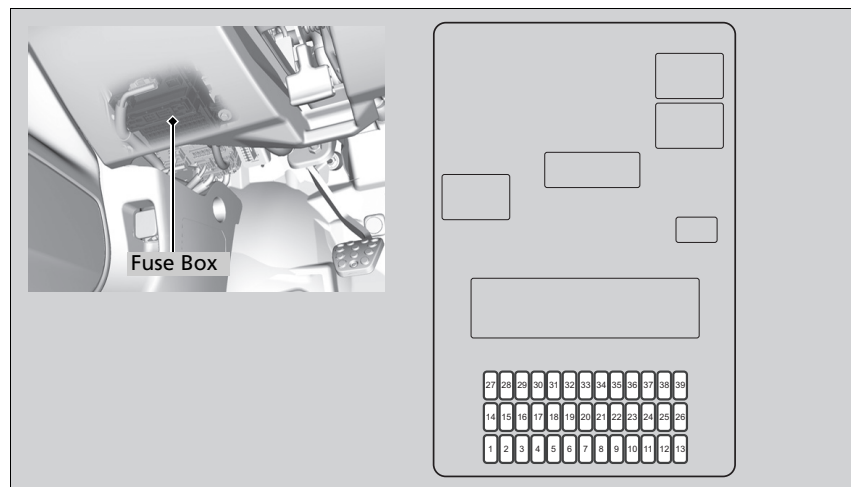
Models without fuse label

■ **Fuse Box A**

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	Key Lock	5 A
3	Rear Wiper Motor*	(10 A)
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	20 A
9	AIRCON	10 A
10	Rear Accessory Power Socket	20 A
11	–	–
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	Starter	10 A
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
23	Rear Fog Light	10 A
24	Option	5 A
25	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Smart	10 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
31	–	–
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	HAC Option	20 A
37	–	–
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A

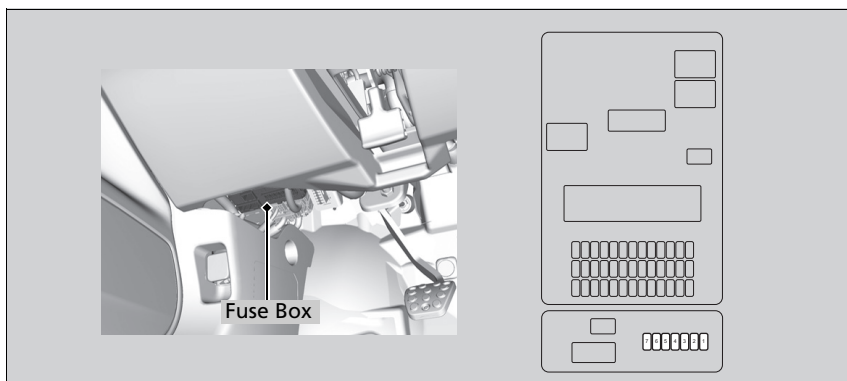
Models without fuse label

■ **Fuse Box B**

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

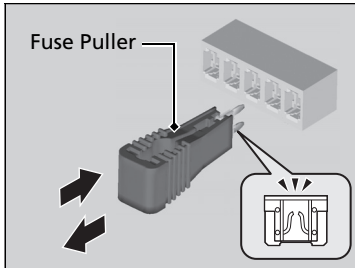
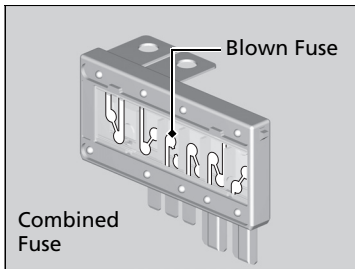
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	–	–
3	Back Up2	10 A
4	Audio	15 A
5	Accessory Cut	10 A
6	VST 1	10 A
7	–	–

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

✎ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Models with fuse label

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

➤ **Fuse Locations** P. 664, 669

Models without fuse label

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

➤ **Fuse Locations** P. 667, 669

All models

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Models with fuse label

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

» Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

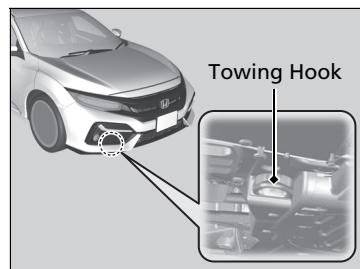
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 519

NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



3. Start the engine.

- ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I***1 or ON **II***1.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Check for any fluid leaks on the ground, underneath the transmission housing.
 - ▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

All models

2. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.

▶▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

Models with keyless access system

- Check that the steering wheel is not locked.

All models

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

Manual transmission models

- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK **0***1 locks the steering wheel.

Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continuously variable transmission models

4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift to **[D]** and hold for five seconds, then to **[N]**.
6. Release the parking brake.

Manual transmission models

4. Shift to **[N]**.
5. Release the parking brake.

►► If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Manual transmission models

Do not slip the clutch for a long time to get unstuck. This may overheat and damage the transmission.

NOTICE

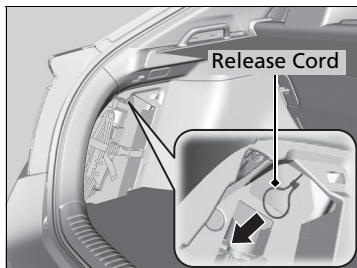
Continuously variable transmission models

If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

■ What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the hatch.
2. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.
3. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the luggage area.
4. Pull the release cord toward you.
 - The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

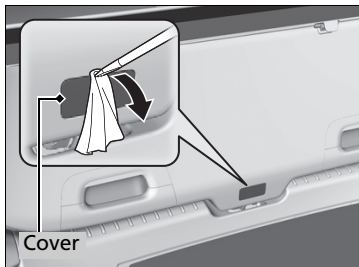
▣ If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

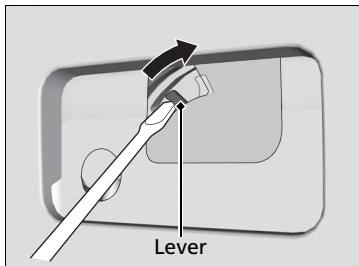
What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the hatch.

► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding the lever with the flat-tip screw driver.

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

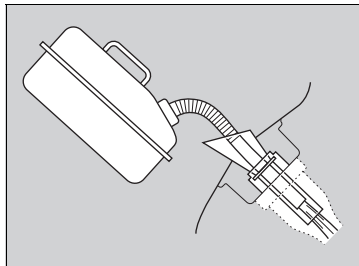
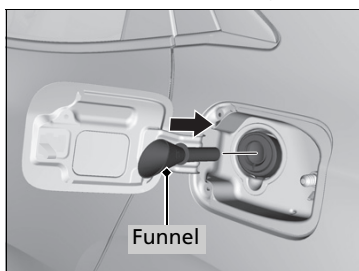
Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
 - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the luggage area.
 - ▶ **Types of Tools** P. 620
4. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
 - ▶ Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.
5. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
 - ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
6. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
 - ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
7. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

NOTICE

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system. Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is petrol before you refuel.

* Not available on all models



Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	684
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number	688
Devices that Emit Radio Waves*	690

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic ^{*1} Civic TYPE R ^{*2}
	1.5 L engine models
	1,316 – 1,350 kg ^{*3}
	1,321 kg ^{*4}
	1,323 kg ^{*5}
	1.8 L engine models
Curb Weight	1,256 – 1,263 kg
	2.0 L engine models
	1,387 kg ^{*6, *8, *9}
	1,372 – 1,392 kg ^{*3}
	1,390 kg ^{*7}
	1,362 – 1,420 kg ^{*10}
	1,400 kg ^{*4}
	1.5 L engine models
	1,735 kg ^{*4, *5}
	1,825 kg ^{*3}
Maximum Permissible Weight	1.8 L engine models
	1,750 kg
	2.0 L engine models
	1,760 kg

- *1: Except 2.0 L engine models
- *2: 2.0 L engine models
- *3: Oceanian models
- *4: Indonesian models
- *5: Thai models
- *6: Hongkong and Macau models
- *7: Philippine models
- *8: Singaporean models
- *9: Malaysian models
- *10: Vietnamese models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC ^{*1, *3} Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder SOHC ^{*2}
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm ^{*1} 81.0 x 87.3 mm ^{*2} 86.0 x 85.9 mm ^{*3}
Displacement	1,498 cm ³ ^{*1} 1,799 cm ³ ^{*2} 1,996 cm ³ ^{*3}
Compression Ratio	10.6 : 1 ^{*1, *2} 9.8 : 1 ^{*3}
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR8H8S ^{*1, *3} SILZKR7C11S ^{*2}

- *1: 1.5 L engine models
- *2: 1.8 L engine models
- *3: 2.0 L engine models

Fuel

	Thai models
	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher ^{*1}
	Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher ^{*2}
	1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models except Thai
Type	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher
	2.0 L engine models except Vietnamese and Thai
	Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number of 95 or higher
	Vietnamese models
	Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	47.0 L ^{*1} 46.9 L ^{*2}

- *1: Except 2.0 L engine models
- *2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)47AH(20)* ¹ 48AH(5)60AH(20)* ²
----------	--

*1: Except 2.0 L engine models

*2: 2.0 L engine models

Idle Stop:

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (L2). Ask a dealer for more details.

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L* ¹ 3.0 L* ²
---------------	--

*1: Except 2.0 L engine models

*2: 2.0 L engine models

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H11)* ¹ LED* ²
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3)* ¹ LED* ²
Front Fog Lights*	35 W (H8)* ³ LED* ⁴
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)* ¹ LED* ²
Side Marker Lights*	5 W (Amber)
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights	LED* ⁵ 5 W (Amber)* ⁶
Brake Lights	21 W
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light*	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2 W
Centre Pocket Lights*	LED
Luggage Area Light	5 W
Glove Box Light*	3.4 W

*1: Models with halogen headlights

*2: Models with LED headlights

*3: Models with halogen fog lights

*4: Models with LED fog lights

*5: Door mirror type models

*6: Fender type models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)* ¹ HFC-134a (R-134a)* ²
	Vietnamese models
	375 – 425 g
Charge Quantity	Except Vietnamese models
	435 – 485 g* ^{3,4} 405 – 455 g* ^{5,6}

*1: Vietnamese models

*2: Except Vietnamese models

*3: 1.5 L engine models

*4: 2.0 L engine models with Right-hand drive type

*5: 1.8 L engine models

*6: 2.0 L engine models with Left-hand drive type

■ Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change
	3.7 L* ¹ 3.5 L* ²

*1: 1.5 L engine models

*2: 1.8 L engine models

■ Manual Transmission Fluid*

Specified	Honda MTF
Capacity	Change
	2.2 L

* Not available on all models

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Models with gasoline particulate filter
	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C2/C3 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
Capacity	Models without gasoline particulate filter
	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30 ACEA A5/B5, API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
Change	3.2 L ^{*1}
	3.5 L ^{*2}
	5.0 L ^{*3}
	Change including filter 3.7 L ^{*2} 5.4 L ^{*3}

- *1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 1.8 L engine models
*3: 2.0 L engine models

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

📄 **Recommended Engine Oil P. 567**

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	4.92 L ^{*1} (change including the remaining 0.58 L in the reserve tank)
	6.00 L ^{*2} (change including the remaining 0.58 L in the reserve tank)
	4.65 L ^{*3} (change including the remaining 0.75 L in the reserve tank)
	4.64 L ^{*4} (change including the remaining 0.75 L in the reserve tank)

- *1: 1.5 L engine models
*2: 1.8 L engine models
*3: 2.0 L engine models with Right-hand drive type
*4: 2.0 L engine models with Left-hand drive type

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/50R17 91V ^{*1} 235/40ZR18 95Y ^{*2} 215/55R16 93H ^{*3} 245/30ZR20 90Y ^{*4}
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T125/80D16 97M ^{*1, *3} T125/70D17 98M ^{*2} T125/70R18 99M ^{*5}
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 × 7J ^{*1} 18 × 8J ^{*2} 16 × 7J ^{*3}
		20 × 8 1/2J ^{*4}
	Compact Spare*	16 × 4T ^{*1, *3} 17 × 4T ^{*2} 18 × 4T ^{*5}

- *1: 1.5 L engine models with 17 inch wheel
*2: 1.5 L engine models with 18 inch wheel
*3: 1.8 L engine models
*4: 2.0 L engine models
*5: Indonesian with 2.0 L engine models

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

■ Vehicle Dimensions

1.5 L and 1.8 L engine models

Length	4,501 mm ^{*1, *2} 4,515 mm ^{*3}
Width	1,799 mm
Height	1,421 mm ^{*1, *3} 1,434 mm ^{*2}
Wheelbase	2,697 mm ^{*1} 2,700 mm ^{*2, *3}
Track	Front 1,537 mm ^{*4} 1,547 mm ^{*5}
	Rear 1,553 mm ^{*4} 1,563 mm ^{*5}

*1: Thai models

*2: Indonesian models

*3: Oceanian models

*4: Models with 18 inch wheel

*5: Models with 16 inch or 17 inch wheel

2.0 L engine models

Length	4,557 mm ^{*1} 4,560 mm ^{*2}
Width	1,875 mm ^{*2} 1,877 mm ^{*1}
Height	1,421 mm ^{*3, *4} 1,434 mm ^{*5} 1,435 mm ^{*2}
Wheelbase	2,700 mm
Track	Front 1,599 mm ^{*1} 1,600 mm ^{*2}
	Rear 1,593 mm ^{*1} 1,595 mm ^{*2}

*1: Except Hongkong and Macau models

*2: Hongkong and Macau models

*3: Oceanian models

*4: Indonesian models

*5: Southeast Asian models except Indonesian

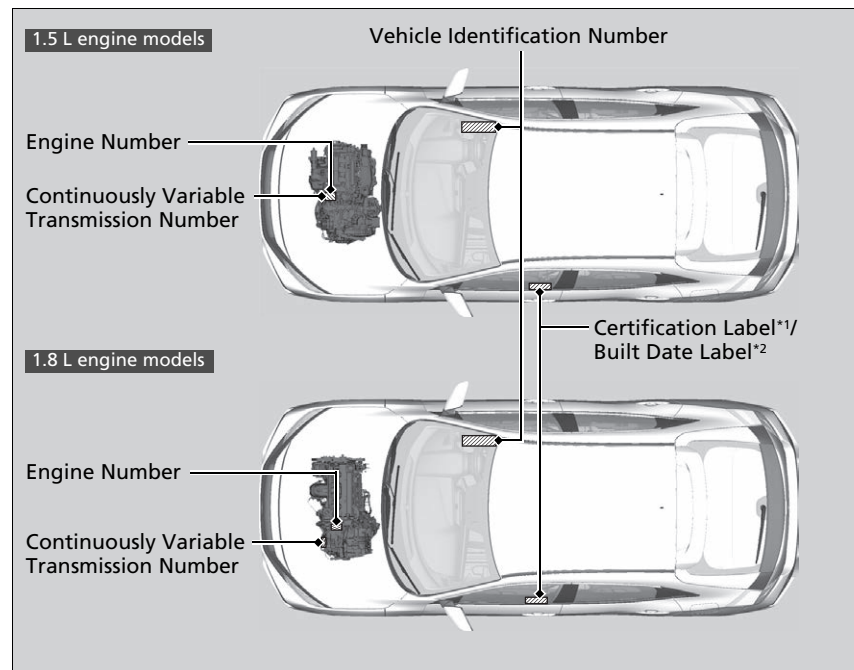
* Not available on all models

■ Max. Towing Weight*

Trailer with brakes	800 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	75 kg

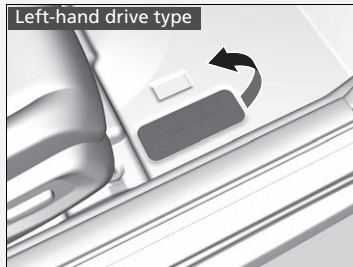
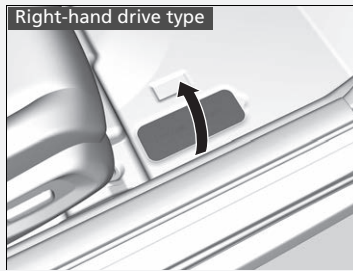
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing, and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

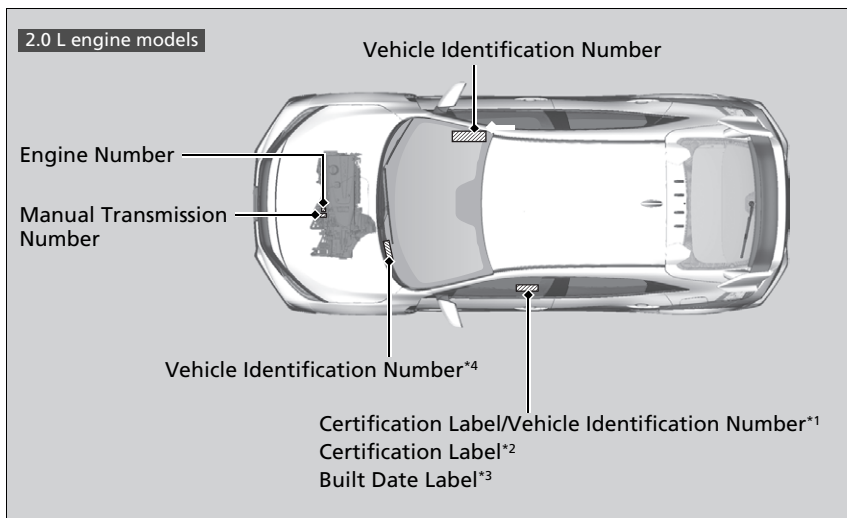


Australian models

The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

*1: Except Oceanian models

*2: Oceanian models



*1: Malaysian models





*2: Except Oceanian and Malaysian models

*3: Oceanian models

*4: Vietnamese models

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System	Keyless Access System	Hands-Free Telephone System
Singaporean models	—	—	BCM/FOB Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A
Vietnamese models	<div> <div>HONDA LOCK A00402010</div> <div>  <div>ICT</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>HONDA LOCK A00402010</div> <div>  <div>ICT</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>HONDAVN A00092011</div> <div>  <div>ICT</div> </div> </div>	<div> <div>Suntech Vietnam Technology Company Limited C0114130815BE01A2</div> <div>  <div>ICT</div> </div> </div>

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*	
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787
Vietnamese models	—

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 416

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)..... 526

ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)..... 488

Accelerator Position Meter 177

Accessories and Modifications..... 617

Accessory Power Socket 258

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 488

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with
Low Speed Follow..... 131, 473

Adding

Coolant..... 573

Engine Oil..... 572

Washer..... 577

Additives, Engine Oil..... 567

Adjustable Speed Limiter 441

Adjusting

Armrest..... 246

Front Head Restraints..... 242

Front Seats 239

Mirrors..... 236

Rear Seats..... 245

Steering Wheel..... 235

Temperature..... 173

Adjusting the Sound..... 302

Agile Handling Assist..... 448

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control
System)..... 264

Changing the Mode..... 267

Defrosting the Windscreen and
Windows..... 268

Dust and Pollen Filter..... 609

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 267

Sensors..... 271

Using Automatic Climate Control..... 264

Air Conditioning System (Heating and
Cooling System)

Dust and Pollen Filter..... 609

Air Pressure..... 686

Airbags..... 56

After a Collision 59

Airbag Care..... 69

Event Data Recorder..... 1

Front Airbags (SRS)..... 58

Indicator..... 68, 114

Sensors..... 56

Side Airbag 64

Side Curtain Airbag 66

AM/FM Radio..... 305

Android Auto 331

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 526

Indicator..... 113

Apple CarPlay 328

Armrest 246

Ashtray..... 262

Audio Remote Controls 278

Audio System 274

Adjusting the Sound 302

Audio/Information Screen 281

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout.. 285

Changing the Screen Interface 299

Closing Apps 301

Customizing the Meter 285

Display Setup 303

Error Messages 335

General Information..... 337

HDMI™ Port..... 277

Home Screen 291

iPod 311

Limitations for Manual Operation..... 304

Menu Customize 300

MP3/WMA/AAC 314

Recommended Devices 337, 338

Remote Controls..... 278

Selecting an Audio Source 304

Status Area 298

USB Flash Drives..... 337

USB Port(s)..... 275

Wallpaper Setup 289

Audio/Information Screen..... 281

Auto High-Beam 225

Auto Idle Stop 423

Automatic Brake Hold 523

Indicator 523

Automatic Folding Door Mirror

Function..... 238

Automatic Lighting..... 220

Average Fuel Economy	167, 172
Average Speed	172

B

Battery	603
Charging System Indicator	109, 656
If the Battery Is Dead	648
Maintenance (Checking the Battery)	603
Maintenance (Replacing)	606
Belts (Seat)	44
Beverage Holders	252
Bluetooth® Audio	317
Booster Seats (For Children)	99
Brake System	519
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	526
Automatic Brake Hold	523
Brake Assist System	527
Fluid	576
Foot Brake	522
Indicator	104, 105
Parking Brake	519
Braking Pressure Meter	177
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ...	232
Bulb Replacement	579
Back-Up Light	587
Brake Lights	587
Ceiling Light	590
Front Fog Lights	581
Front Turn Signal Lights	583
Glove Box Light	591

Headlights	579
High-Mount Brake Light	588
Interior Lights	590
Luggage Area Light	590
Map Light	589
Position/Daytime Running Lights	586
Rear Licence Plate Light	588
Rear Turn Signal Light	587
Side Marker Lights	584
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	586
Taillights	588
Taillights and Rear Fog Lights	588
Vanity Mirror Light	590
Bulb Specifications	685

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	101
Carrying Luggage	393, 395
Certification Label	688
Changing Bulbs	579
Charging System Indicator	109, 656
Child Restraint System	73
Booster Seats	99
Child Restraint System for Infants	77
Child Restraint System for Small Children...	79
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	91
Larger Children	98
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	77

Selecting a Child Restraint System	80
Using Tether	94
Child Safety	73
Childproof Door Locks	196
Cleaning the Exterior	614
Cleaning the Interior	611
Climate Control System	264
Changing the Mode	264
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	268
Dust and Pollen Filter	609
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	267
Sensors	271
Using Automatic Climate Control	264
Clock	182
Coat Hooks	254
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	462
Compact Spare Tyre	621, 686
Console Compartment	250
Continuously Variable Transmission	411
Creeping	411
Fluid	575
Kickdown	411
Operating the Shift Lever	26, 412, 413, 414, 415
Shift Lever Does Not Move	652
Shifting	412, 414
Controls	181

Coolant (Engine).....	573
Adding to the Radiator.....	574
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	573
Overheating.....	653
Creeping.....	411
Cruise Control.....	431, 437
Indicator.....	125
Cup Holders.....	252
Customized Features.....	343
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/ Unlocking Setting.....	198

D

DAB.....	308
Daytime Running Lights.....	224
Dead Battery.....	648
Defaulting All the Settings.....	371
Deflation Warning System.....	450, 453
Indicator.....	118, 119
Initialisation.....	450, 454
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows.....	268
Devices that Emit Radio Waves.....	690
Dimming.....	
Headlights.....	218
Rearview Mirror.....	236
Dipstick (Engine Oil).....	569
Directional Signals (Turn Signal).....	217
Display Setup.....	303
Display/Information Button.....	169, 281

Door Mirrors.....	237
Doors.....	183
Door Open Indicator.....	43, 115
Keys.....	183
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside.....	195
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside.....	186
Drive Mode Switch.....	429
Driver Information Interface.....	169
Driving.....	391
Braking.....	519
Continuously Variable Transmission.....	411
Cruise Control.....	431, 437
Shifting Gear.....	412, 414, 418
Starting the Engine.....	401, 404
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	609

E

Eco Assist System.....	11
ECON Mode.....	422
Elapsed Time.....	172
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System.....	660
Indicator.....	115, 660
Emergency.....	676
Emergency Stop Signal.....	528
Engine.....	688
Coolant.....	573
If the Battery Is Dead.....	648
Oil.....	567

Starting.....	401, 404
Switch Buzzer.....	212
Engine Coolant.....	573
Adding to the Radiator.....	574
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	573
Overheating.....	653
Engine Oil.....	567
Adding.....	572
Checking.....	569
Low Oil Level Indicator.....	663
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	107, 656
Recommended Engine Oil.....	567
Engine Start/Stop Button.....	213
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System.....	115, 660
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide).....	101
Exterior Care (Cleaning).....	614
Exterior Mirrors.....	237

F

Features.....	273
Filter.....	
Dust and Pollen.....	609
Flat Tyre.....	621
Floor Mats.....	612
Fluids.....	
Automatic Transmission.....	575
Brake Fluid.....	576
Engine Coolant.....	573
Windscreen Washer.....	577

FM/AM Radio	305
Fog Light	222
Folding Down the Rear Seats	245
Foot Brake	522
Front Airbags (SRS)	58
Front Fog Light Indicator	121
Front Head Restraints	242
Front Seat Heaters	263
Front Seats.....	239
Adjusting.....	239
Front Sensor Camera	516
Fuel	537
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions.....	543
Gauge	164
Instant Fuel Economy.....	167, 172
Low Fuel Indicator.....	113
Range	167, 172
Recommendation.....	537
Refueling.....	537
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions.....	543
Fuel Fill Cap	28, 29, 540, 541, 542
Fuel Fill Door	28, 29, 540, 541
Fuses	664
Inspecting and Changing	675
Locations	664, 669

G

Gauges.....	164
-------------	-----

Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable	
Transmission	412, 414
Manual Transmission	418
Glass (care)	615
Glove Box	249
G-Meter	177

H

Halogen Bulbs.....	579, 581
Hands-Free Telephone System (HFT)	372
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook	
and Call History	383
HFT Buttons.....	372
HFT Menus	375
HFT Status Display	374
Limitations for Manual Operation	374
Making a Call	386
Options During a Call	389
Phone Setup.....	379
Receiving a Call	389
Ring Tone	382
Speed Dial	384
Hatch	201
Light Bulb.....	590
Release Lever.....	680
Unable to Open	680
Hazard Warning Button.....	4
HDMI™ Port	277
Headlight Washers	231

Headlights.....	218
Aiming	579
Automatic Operation.....	220
Dimming	218, 224
Operating.....	218
Heated Door Mirror	234
Heaters.....	263
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone System).....	372
High Beam Indicator	121
Honda Sensing.....	459
Honda TRK.....	632

I

Identification Numbers	688
Engine and Transmission	688
Vehicle Identification	688
Ignition Switch	212
Illumination Control.....	232
Knob.....	232
Immobilizer System	204
Indicator.....	124

Indicators	104
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System).....	113
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow.....	132, 473
Auto High-Beam.....	120
Auto Idle Stop.....	123
Auto Idle Stop System.....	123
Automatic Brake Hold.....	523
Brake Depressing.....	127
Charging System.....	109
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).....	133, 135, 136
Cruise Control.....	125, 433, 439
Cruise Main.....	125, 431, 433, 437, 439
Deflation Warning System.....	118
Door and Hatch Open.....	115
Drive Mode.....	122
ECON Mode.....	122
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System.....	115
Front Fog Light.....	121
Gear Position.....	111
High Beam.....	121
Immobilizer System.....	124
Keyless Access System.....	122
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	132, 504
Lights On.....	121
Low Fuel.....	113
Low Oil Pressure.....	107
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System.....	119
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	108

Parking Brake and Brake System.....	104, 105
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber).....	106
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off.....	114
Rear Fog Light.....	121
Road Departure Mitigation.....	128
Rotate Wheel.....	126
Seat Belt Reminder.....	112
Security System Alarm.....	124
Shift Down.....	110
Shift Position.....	110
Shift to Park.....	126
Shift Up.....	110
Speed Limiter.....	125
Supplemental Restraint System.....	114
System Message.....	120
Transmission System.....	110
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning.....	121
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) system.....	116
VSA OFF.....	117, 446
Instrument Panel	103
Brightness Control.....	232
Interior Lights	247
Interior Rearview Mirror	236
iPod	311

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	627
Jump Starting	648

K

Key Number Tag	185
Keys	183
Number Tag.....	185
Rear Door Won't Open.....	196
Remote Transmitter.....	191
Types and Functions.....	183
Won't Turn.....	33
Kickdown	411

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	502
LaneWatch™	456
Language (HFT)	374
Lights	218, 579
Automatic.....	220
Bulb Replacement.....	579
Daytime Running Lights.....	224
Fog Lights.....	222
High Beam Indicator Light.....	121
Interior.....	247
Light Switches.....	218
Lights On Indicator.....	121
Turn Signals.....	217
Limited Slip Differential (LSD)	449
Load Limits	395
Locking/Unlocking	183
Childproof Door Locks.....	196
From Inside.....	195
From Outside.....	186

Keys.....	183
Using a Key.....	193
Low Battery Charge.....	656
Low Fuel Indicator.....	113
Low Oil Level Symbol.....	663
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	656
Lower Anchorages.....	87
Lubricant Specifications Chart.....	686
Luggage (Load Limit).....	395
Luggage Area Cover.....	256
Luggage Hook.....	255

M

Maintenance.....	545
Battery.....	603
Brake Fluid.....	576
Cleaning.....	611
Coolant.....	573
Oil.....	569
Precautions.....	546
Radiator.....	574
Remote Transmitter.....	606
Replacing Light Bulbs.....	579
Safety.....	547
Transmission Fluid.....	575
Tyres.....	597
Under the Bonnet.....	562
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	108, 657
Manual Transmission.....	418
Map Lights.....	248

Maximum Permissible Weight.....	395
Meters, Gauges.....	164
Mirrors.....	236
Adjusting.....	236
Door.....	237
Exterior.....	237
Interior Rearview.....	236
Modifications (and Accessories).....	617
MP3.....	314
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	535

N

Numbers (Identification).....	688
-------------------------------	-----

O

Odometer.....	166, 171
Oil (Engine).....	567
Adding.....	572
Checking.....	569
Low Oil Level Indicator.....	663
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	107, 656
Oil Monitor System.....	549
Recommended Engine Oil.....	567
Viscosity.....	567
Open Source Licences.....	341
Opening.....	680
Hatch.....	680
Opening/Closing.....	565
Bonnet.....	565

Power Windows.....	206
Sunroof.....	210
Outside Temperature Display.....	173
Overheating.....	653

P

Paddle Shifters (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode).....	416, 417
Parking Brake.....	519
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator.....	104, 105
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber).....	106
Parking Sensor System.....	531
Passing Indicators.....	218
Petrol.....	28, 29, 537
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions.....	543
Gauge.....	164
Information.....	537
Instant Fuel Economy.....	167, 172
Low Fuel Indicator.....	113
Refueling.....	537
Playing Bluetooth® Audio.....	317
Pop-up Hood System.....	70
Pop-up Hood System Care.....	72
Precautions While Driving.....	409
Rain.....	410
Pregnant Women.....	53
Puncture (Tyre).....	621

R

Radar Sensor	518
Radiator	574
Radio (FM/AM)	305
Radio Data System (RDS)	307
RDS (Radio Data System)	307
Rear Demister	234
Rear Fog Light Indicator	121
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	245
Rearview Mirror	236
Refueling	537
Fuel Gauge	164
Low Fuel Indicator	113
Petrol	537, 684
Regulations	690
Remote Transmitter	191
Replacement	
Battery	606
Bulbs	579
Fuses	664, 669
Tyres	621
Wiper Blade Rubber	592
Resetting a Trip Meter	167, 172
Rev Indicators	177
Rev Match System	419
Road Departure Mitigation	510
On and Off	513

S

Safe Driving	39
--------------------	----

Safety Check	43
Safety Labels	102
Safety Message	0
Seat Belts	44
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor	52
Checking	54
Fastening	50
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	91
Pregnant Women	53
Reminder	47
Warning Indicator	47, 112
Seats	239
Adjusting	239
Front Seat Heaters	263
Front Seats	239
Rear Seats	245
Security System	204
Immobilizer System Indicator	124
Security System Alarm Indicator	124
Select Lever	412, 414
Operation	412, 414
Releasing	652
Won't Move	652
Selecting a Child Restraint System	80
Setting the Clock	182
Shift Lever	412, 414, 418
Shift Position Indicator	110, 413, 415
Shift Up Backlight/Shift Up Alarm	165
Shift Up/Down Indicator	420
Shifting (Transmission)	412, 414, 418

Shoulder Anchor	52
Side Airbags	64
Side Curtain Airbag	66
Siri Eyes Free	327
Smartphone Connection	321
Spare Tyre	621, 686
Spark Plugs	684
Specifications	684
Specified Fuel	537
Speed Limiter, Adjustable	441
Speedometer	164
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	58
Start/Stop Button	213
Starting the Engine	401, 404
Does Not Start	644
Engine Switch Buzzer	212
If the Battery Is Dead	648
Steering Wheel	235
Adjusting	235
Stopping	529
Stopwatch	178
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	58
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 212
System Message Indicator	120

T

Tachometer	164
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display	173

Temperature Sensor	173, 271
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	632
Tie-down Anchors	255
Time (Setting)	182
Tools	620
Towing a Trailer	396
Equipment and Accessories	398
Load Limits	396
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency	676
Transmission	412, 414, 418
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode	416
Continuously Variable	
Transmission	412, 414
Fluid	575
Gear Position Indicator	111
Manual	418
Number	688
Shift Position Indicator	110, 413, 415
Trip Knob	166, 171
Trip Meter	167, 171
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)	632
Troubleshooting	619
Blown Fuse	664, 669
Brake Pedal Vibrates	33
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door	35
Emergency Towing	676
Engine Won't Start	644
Noise When Braking	36
Overheating	653
Puncture/Flat Tyre	621

Rear Door Won't Open	34
Select Lever Won't Move	652
Warning Indicators	104
Turbo Engine Vehicle	544
Turn Signals	217
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	121
Tyres	597
Air Pressure	686
Checking and Maintaining	597
Inspection	597
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	621
Rotation	600
Spare Tyre	621, 686
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	632
Tyre Chains	601
Wear Indicators	598
Winter	601

U

Unlocking the Doors	186
Unlocking the Front Doors from the	
Inside	195
USB Adapter Cable	274
USB Flash Drives	314, 337
USB Port(s)	275

V

Vanity Mirrors	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers	688

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	445
OFF Indicator	117
Off Switch	446
System Indicator	116
Viscosity (Oil)	567, 686
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	445

W

Wallpaper	289
Warning and Information Message	138
Warning and Information Messages	137
Warning Indicator On/Blinking	656
Warning Labels	102
Watts	685
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	598
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)	627
Wi-Fi Connection	325
Window Washers	228
Adding/Refilling Fluid	577
Switch	228
Windows (Opening and Closing)	206
Windscreen	228
Cleaning	615
Defrosting/Defogging	268
Washer Fluid	577
Wiper Blades	592
Wipers and Washers	228
Winter Tyres	601
Tyre Chains	601

Wipers and Washers	228
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	592
Wireless Charger.....	259
WMA	314
Worn Tyres	597